Basic
Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

Oxford
Word Skills
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acknowledgements</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Starter unit</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to use a unit</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to learn new words</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to do the exercises</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations and symbols</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Basic English</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 I can understand and say numbers</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 I can tell the time</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 I can say days and dates</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 I can say countries and nationalities</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I can use classroom vocabulary</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I can use English language words</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 I can ask and answer questions about language</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **People**                                   |      |
| 8 I can give personal information            | 26   |
| 9 I can fill in a form                       | 27   |
| 10 I can talk about my family                | 28   |
| 11 I can describe physical actions          | 30   |
| 12 I can name parts of the body              | 32   |
| 13 I can describe people                     | 33   |
| 14 I can talk about character                | 36   |
| 15 I can describe relationships             | 38   |
| 16 I can say how I feel                      | 40   |
| Review                                       | 42   |
### Everyday life

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>I can describe my routine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>I can talk about clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>I can buy clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>I can talk about money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>I can talk about the weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>I can talk about illness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>I can get help at the chemist's</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review** 61

### Food and drink

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>I can name meat and fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>I can name fruit and vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>I can buy food in a shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>I can order in a café</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>I can order in a restaurant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review** 75

### Getting around

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>I can get around on buses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>I can get around on trains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>I can ask for and give directions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>I can talk about roads and traffic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>I can understand signs and notices</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review** 87

### Places

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>I can talk about my country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>I can talk about my town</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>I can describe the countryside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>I can talk about shops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>I can talk about my home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>I can describe a kitchen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>I can describe a bedroom and bathroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>I can describe a living room</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review** 105
## Study and work

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>I can talk about my school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>I can talk about university</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>I can name jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>I can describe a job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>I can talk about using a computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>I can use email and the Internet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Review

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Hobbies and interests

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>I can say what I like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>I can talk about sport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>I can talk about my free time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>I can talk about music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>I can talk about films</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>I can talk about the media</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Review

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Holidays

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>I can arrange a holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>I can book a hotel room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>I can communicate in an airport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>I can describe a beach holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>I can describe a sightseeing holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>I can use the bank and post office</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Review

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Social English

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>I can meet and greet people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>I can use special greetings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>I can ask for information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>I can ask for things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>I can invite people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>I can make suggestions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>I can offer, accept, and refuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>I can say sorry and respond</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
68 I can express my opinion 165
69 I can use the phone 166

Review 168

Language
70 I can use common adjectives 172
71 I can use common adverbs 174
72 I can use irregular verbs 176
73 I can use phrasal verbs 178
74 I can use prepositions of time 180
75 I can use time words and phrases 181
76 I can use prepositions of place and movement 183
77 I can use link words (1) 186
78 I can use link words (2) 188
79 I can use ‘have’ and ‘have got’ 190
80 I can use ‘got’ 192

Review 193

Vocabulary building tables 199
Common irregular verbs 202
Answer key 203
Answer key to review units 225
List of spotlight boxes 235
Word list/Index 237
Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers would like to thank teachers and students from the following schools who helped with the development of this book:

International House, Business English Centre, Madrid, Spain
Shamrock School of English, Getxo, Biskia, Spain
English Language Institute, Macarena, Seville, Spain
English Centre, Valencia, Spain
Tti School of English, London, UK
Bell International, London, UK
Mark Appleton, Mark Lloyd and the students at International House, Bath, UK
Malgorzata Salomądzy, Dorota Bruch, Anna Wnuk and Iza Algrimsen in Poland
They would also like to thank Scott Thornbury and Rachel Dudley.

ABOUT YOU answers were kindly supplied by the following people:

Andreas Schmidt (Germany)
Ayumi Whitehouse (Japan)
Funda Bolat (Turkey)
Esteban Cichello Hubner (Argentina)
Anna Anagnostopoulou (Greece)
László Rézműves (Hungary)
Ruth Cairns and Stuart Rodman (UK)
Marcelo Ritter (Brazil)
Jung Hyung Oh (South Korea)
Introduction

What is Oxford Word Skills?

Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn, practise and revise new vocabulary.

- **Basic**: elementary and pre-intermediate (CEF levels A1 and A2)
- **Intermediate**: intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)
- **Advanced**: advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each book contains 80 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are between one and three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately usually on the same page. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of five to ten units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- vocabulary building tables
- an answer key for all the exercises
- a list of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where the item appears

There is a CD-ROM at each level with oral pronunciation models for all the vocabulary taught, and further practice exercises, including listening activities.

What vocabulary is included?

At Basic level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. clothes, free time, at the airport
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. inviting people, using the phone
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prepositions of place, phrasal verbs

There is a particular emphasis on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English. This is continued at Intermediate level with the addition of more vocabulary from different styles of written English. At Advanced level, learners encounter more figurative meanings of vocabulary items as well as more idiomatic language.

The series includes almost all of the words in the Oxford 3000™ which lists the 3,000 words teachers and students should prioritise in their teaching and learning. The list is based on frequency and usefulness to learners, and was developed by Oxford University Press using corpus evidence and information supplied by a panel of over 70 experts in the fields of teaching and language study. In addition, we have included a wide range of high frequency phrases, e.g. at the moment, never mind, as well as items which are extremely useful in a particular context, e.g. main course in a restaurant, or hand luggage at an airport.
We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple glossary definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to an appropriate learner’s dictionary for information on other meanings. (See How to learn new words in the Starter unit for advice.)

How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through visuals, tables or different types of text, including dialogues. The meaning of new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying mini-glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Particularly important items are highlighted by means of ‘spotlight’ boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for 5-10 minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary using the cover card enclosed with the book. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new items while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice-versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
- You will often notice the headings “About you” or “About your country”. These indicate personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pair work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner’s answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.

How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If working alone, learners should look at the Starter unit first. For self-study, we recommend that learners use the book alongside the CD-ROM, as it gives them a pronunciation model for every item of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. They can check their own answers and use the cover card to test themselves. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge.
Starter

A How to use a unit

Study the new words. They are usually in bold type.

You can listen to the words on the CD-ROM and practise the pronunciation. Or you can look at the wordlist (page 235) to find out how to say the words.

27 I can order in a café

Glossary

A 'spotlight' tells you about important words.

Sometimes a glossary explains the new words.

Do the exercises. Check your answers in the answer key (page 203).

Use the cover card to test yourself.

There's more practice in the review units and on the CD-ROM.
B  How to learn new words

- Repeat the words two or three times to help you remember them.

- Use a coloured pen to help you remember difficult words.

- Write down new words in a notebook. Write the meaning in English or your own language, or draw a picture.

- Write the words in sentences. Say them to yourself.

- You can do the exercises in the review units, or the CD-ROM exercises, after each unit. Or do them a month later to test yourself, perhaps after you’ve studied all the units in that module (e.g. basic English).

- Look at the vocabulary building tables at the back of the book (pages 199 to 201).

- Go to the website (www.oup.com/elt/wordskills) for links to more practice and other useful websites.

- Make the names of vegetables from the letters.
  1. sape, pear
  2. nico, onion
  3. prepp, pepper
  4. caca,aba, cabbage
  5. nasb, beans

- Use a pencil. Check your answers, then rub them out and do them again a week later.

---

**Oxford ESSENTIAL Dictionary**

Buy a good dictionary for your level. The Oxford Essential Dictionary (Oxford University Press) is very good for elementary and pre-intermediate learners.
C How to do the exercises

Learn these words. You need to understand them to do the exercises.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tick</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underline</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross out</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circle</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complete</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right</td>
<td>'2 + 2 = 4' is right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrong</td>
<td>'2 + 2 = 5' is wrong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mistake</td>
<td>If something is a mistake, it's wrong. e.g. English (The 'T' is a mistake.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correct</td>
<td>Make something right. e.g. English (wrong) English (right)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
<td>e.g. London is in England. That's true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>false</td>
<td>e.g. Paris is in Italy. That's false. It's in France.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the same</td>
<td>e.g. Small and little are the same. (small = little)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>different</td>
<td>e.g. Big and small are different. (They're not the same.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match</td>
<td>Find something that you can put with another thing. e.g. 1 I'm from _______ a music 2 I can speak _______ b Japan 3 I like _______ c English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>missing</td>
<td>If something is missing, it is not there. e.g. He comes New York. The word from is missing. (He comes from New York.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cover</td>
<td>Put one thing over another thing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is a table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tick</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The table has two columns: a column for 'words' and a column for 'meanings'.

Test yourself. Look at the words and cover the meaning. Can you remember the meaning?
D Abbreviations and symbols

opposite. Old is the opposite of young.
SYN synonym: a word that means the same as another word, e.g. small = little
INF informal. If a word or phrase is informal, you use it when you are speaking to friends or people you know very well. The opposite is formal. If a word or phrase is formal, you use it at important and serious times with people you don’t know very well, or in written English.
etc. You use etc. at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren’t going to say them all.
e.g. for example: Fruit. e.g. apples and bananas.
v uncountable noun. These nouns have no plural form and can’t be used with a or an.
pr past tense (past simple form of an irregular verb)
pp past participle

Vowels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>i:</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>/sI/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>happy</td>
<td>/'hepi/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>/ten/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ə</td>
<td>hat</td>
<td>/haet/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ə:</td>
<td>father</td>
<td>/'fa:fa(ə)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʊ</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>/got/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɛ</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>/sə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʌ</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>/pət/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>casual</td>
<td>/'kæsəl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u:</td>
<td>too</td>
<td>/tu:/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʌ</td>
<td>cup</td>
<td>/kʌp/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ</td>
<td>bird</td>
<td>/bəd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ə</td>
<td>about</td>
<td>/'əbət/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɛt</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>/sæ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>əo</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>/goʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>əi</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>/fi:v/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>əu</td>
<td>now</td>
<td>/naʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ət</td>
<td>boy</td>
<td>/boʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æə</td>
<td>near</td>
<td>/nəə(ə)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>əu</td>
<td>hair</td>
<td>/heə(ə)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>əə</td>
<td>sure</td>
<td>/ʃuə(ə)/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Consonants

| p | pen | /pen/ |
| b | bad | /bæd/ |
| t | tea | /ti:/ |
| d | did | /did/ |
| k | cat | /kat/ |
| g | got | /got/ |
| ʧ | cheap | /ʧeip/ |
| ʤ | jam | /ʤæm/ |
| f | fall | /fæl/ |
| v | verb | /vərb/ |
| ʃ | thin | /θɪn/ |
| ʤ | this | /ðɪs/ |
| s | so | /so/ |
| ʒ | zero | /ˈzɛərəʊ/ |
| ʃ | shoe | /ʃu/ |
| ʒ | television | /telvɪʃən, tel'vɪʃən/ |
| h | hat | /ha/ |
| m | map | /mæp/ |
| n | no | /no/ |
| ŋ | sing | /sɪŋ/ |
| l | leg | /leg/ |
| r | red | /red/ |
| j | yes | /jes/ |
| w | wet | /wet/ |
## I can understand and say numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>six</td>
<td>seven</td>
<td>eight</td>
<td>nine</td>
<td>ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eleven</td>
<td>twelve</td>
<td>thirteen</td>
<td>fourteen</td>
<td>fifteen</td>
<td>sixteen</td>
<td>seventeen</td>
<td>eighteen</td>
<td>nineteen</td>
<td>twenty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twenty-one</td>
<td>twenty-two</td>
<td>thirty</td>
<td>forty</td>
<td>fifty</td>
<td>sixty</td>
<td>seventy</td>
<td>eighty</td>
<td>ninety</td>
<td>a/hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>1,050</td>
<td>1,250</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td>2,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a/hundred and one</td>
<td>a/hundred and forty</td>
<td>two hundred</td>
<td>a/one thousand</td>
<td>a/one thousand and fifty</td>
<td>a/one thousand two hundred and fifty</td>
<td>two thousand</td>
<td>a/one hundred thousand</td>
<td>a/one million</td>
<td>two million or two-millions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In large numbers (over 999), write a comma (,) between thousands and hundreds, e.g. 11,000, and between millions and thousands, e.g. 3,000,000.

### 1 Correct the mistakes.

1. thirty one  **Thirty-one**
2. two hundreds  **Two hundred**
3. three hundred forty  **Three hundred forty**
4. twenty two  **Twenty-two**
5. one thousand and two hundred  **One thousand two hundred**
6. two thousand three hundred fifty  **Two thousand three hundred fifty**

### 2 Write the middle number in words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>24</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>26</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>118</th>
<th>120</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Twenty-four</strong></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>5,057</td>
<td>11,300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>11,300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>11,300</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3 Write the number in words using about.

1. sixty-eight people  **About seventy people**
2. ninety-seven euros  **About ninety euros**
3. nine students  **About nine students**
4. thirty-one years  **About thirty years**
5. one thousand nine hundred and ninety  **About one thousand nine hundred and eighty**
6. seventy-eight people  **About eighty people**
7. two hundred and forty-nine thousand  **About two hundred and fifty thousand**
8. nine hundred and eighty thousand  **About one million**

### 4 Test yourself. Cover the words in the table and say the numbers.
2 I can tell the time  Do Unit 1 first

A Telling the time

What’s the time? What time is it?

- It’s four o’clock.
- It’s five past six.
- It’s quarter past four.
- It’s twenty past six.
- It’s four fifteen.
- It’s twenty to seven.
- It’s half past four.
- It’s six twenty.
- It’s quarter to five.
- It’s three minutes to seven.
- It’s six forty.
- It’s four forty-five.
- It’s six fifty-seven.

Use minutes with to and past when the number of minutes is not five, ten, fifteen, twenty or twenty-five, e.g. three minutes past six or three past six.

1 Write the times in words.
   1 3.10 three ten
   2 9.15
   3 10.25
   4 3.35
   5 11.45
   6 3.45
   7 6.20
   8 7.30
   9 8.40

2 Write the times in words. Use past and to.
   1 12.30 half past twelve
   2 7.15
   3 9.30
   4 11.35
   5 3.50
   6 8.25
   7 1.03
   8 2.45
   9 4.17

3 Test yourself. Look at the clocks. Cover the words and say the times.

B Giving more information

| 9 a.m. | nine o’clock in the morning |
| 12.00 p.m. | noon |
| 3.00 a.m. | midnight |
| 5 p.m. | five o’clock in the afternoon |
| 6.30 p.m. | nearly 7 o’clock |
| 7 p.m. | seven o’clock in the evening |
| 7.57 | nearly/even eight o’clock |
| 8.02 | just after eight |
| 11.30 p.m. | eleven thirty at night |
| 12.00 a.m. | midnight |

4 Same or different? Write S or D.

| 8.45 p.m. | 8.45 in the evening | S |
| 3.00 p.m. | nearly 3.00 | D |
| 12.00 at night | midnight |
| 4.00 a.m. | 4.00 in the afternoon |
| 6.30 | nearly 6.30 |
| 11.45 p.m. | 11.45 at night |
| 8.43 | nearly quarter to nine |
| 2.17 | quarter past two |
| 12.03 p.m. | just after midday |
| 3.00 a.m. | three o’clock |

5 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1 When do banks open in your country?

2 Do they close at midday?

3 What time do shops close?

4 What time do bars open?

5 What time do they close?

6 When do post offices open and close?
3 I can say days and dates  Do Unit 1 first

A Days, months, and seasons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>days of the week</th>
<th>Monday</th>
<th>Tuesday</th>
<th>Wednesday</th>
<th>Thursday</th>
<th>Friday</th>
<th>Saturday</th>
<th>Sunday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>months of the year</td>
<td>January</td>
<td>February</td>
<td>March</td>
<td>April</td>
<td>May</td>
<td>June</td>
<td>July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seasons (in Britain)</td>
<td>spring (March – May)</td>
<td>summer (June – August)</td>
<td>autumn (September – November)</td>
<td>winter (December – February)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>special days</td>
<td>Christmas Day (25 December)</td>
<td>New Year's Day (1 January)</td>
<td>your birthday (the day you were born)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spotlight Capital letters
Days and months have a capital letter.
Monday not monday January not january

1 Put the words in the correct order. Write the number in the box.

1 Wednesday [ ] Saturday [ ] Monday [ ] Friday [ ] Tuesday [ ] Sunday [ ] Thursday [ ]
2 autumn [ ] spring [ ] winter [ ] summer [ ]
3 December [ ] March [ ] June [ ] February [ ] November [ ] January [ ] October [ ]
April [ ] July [ ] September [ ] May [ ] August [ ]

2 Write the next day, month or season.

1 Monday
2 August
3 spring
4 November
5 Friday
6 March
7 January
8 autumn
9 Wednesday
10 July

3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1 Which month is your birthday?
2 Which season do you like best? Why?
3 Which day of the week do you like best? Why?
4 What do you do on New Year's Day?
5 What are two other special days in the year, and when are they?

4 Test yourself. Cover the days, months and seasons, and say or write them.
B Ordinal numbers and dates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st</th>
<th>first</th>
<th>6th</th>
<th>sixth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>second</td>
<td>7th</td>
<td>seventh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>third</td>
<td>8th</td>
<td>eighth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th</td>
<td>fourth</td>
<td>9th</td>
<td>ninth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5th</td>
<td>fifth</td>
<td>10th</td>
<td>tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11th</td>
<td>eleventh</td>
<td>12th</td>
<td>twelfth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13th</td>
<td>thirteenth</td>
<td>14th</td>
<td>fourteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15th</td>
<td>fifteenth</td>
<td>16th</td>
<td>sixteenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21st</td>
<td>twenty-first</td>
<td>22nd</td>
<td>twenty-second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23rd</td>
<td>twenty-third</td>
<td>30th</td>
<td>thirtieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31st</td>
<td>thirty-first</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Complete the words.
- sixth: 5 eig...th
- 1 th...rd: 6 si...teenth
- 2 twen...th: 7 fo...teenth
- 3 fi...th: 8 th...teenth
- 4 f...rst: 9 s...cond

6 Look at the calendar.
Answer the questions.
Write the dates as we say them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>March</th>
<th>April</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S M T W T F S</td>
<td>S M T W T F S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 2 3</td>
<td>1 2 3 4 5 6 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 5 6 7 8 9 10</td>
<td>8 9 10 11 12 13 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 12 13 14 15 16 17</td>
<td>15 16 17 18 19 20 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 19 20 21 22 23 24</td>
<td>22 23 24 25 26 27 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 26 27 28 29 30 31</td>
<td>29 30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When's ...
- the first Saturday in March? 1 March the third, or The third of March.
- the second Tuesday in April? _________________________________
- the second Wednesday in April? _______________________________
- the first Sunday in March? _________________________________
- the first Friday in April? _________________________________
- the third Tuesday in April? ________________________________
- the fifth Saturday in March? _______________________________
- the third Wednesday in March? ______________________________
- the fourth Monday in April? _________________________________

7 Write the dates or years as we say them.
- 6.9 The sixth of September, or September the sixth.
- 1 3.2 ___________________________ 7 21.5 ________________________
- 2 4.7 ___________________________ 8 30.11 ________________________
- 3 10.12 _________________________ 9 22.4 _________________________
- 4 12.8 __________________________ 10 2015 ______________________
- 5 15.1 __________________________ 11 Today's date __________________
- 6 1989 __________________________ 12 The date next Tuesday ________________
4 I can say countries and nationalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area in the world</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Nationality (Language)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>The Czech Republic</td>
<td>Czech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>France</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hungary</td>
<td>Hungarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Poland</td>
<td>Polish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>Swiss (German, French, Italian)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia/Asia/Pacific</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>Indian (Hindi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>China</td>
<td>Chinese (Mandarin, Cantonese)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>South Korea</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>Thai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North America</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Canadian (English, French)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central America</td>
<td>The United States</td>
<td>American (English)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South America</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>Mexican (Spanish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>Argentinian (Spanish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Brazilian (Portuguese)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Middle East</td>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
<td>Saudi (Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Africa</td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>Egyptian (Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australasia</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Australian (English)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The word for the language and the word for the nationality are usually the same, e.g. Czech is the nationality and the language. Sometimes they are different, e.g. people from Mexico are Mexican, but they speak Spanish. Countries, nationalities, and languages begin with capital letters: Japan not Japan.

**Spotlight: People from a country**

To talk about people from a country, we often add 's' to the nationality, e.g. Italians, Brazilians, Thais, Greeks. Some plural forms are irregular: the British, the French, the English, the Spanish, the Chinese, the Japanese, the Swiss.

(Great) Britain = England, Wales, and Scotland

The United Kingdom / The UK = England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland

Only people from England are English. People from Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland are not English, but they are British.
1. True or false? Write T or F.
   ◦ Argentinians speak Spanish. T
   1. Saudis speak Arabic. ___
   2. Mexicans speak Spanish. ___
   3. Thais speak Japanese. ___
   4. Hungarians speak Hungarian. ___
   5. Australians speak Australian. ___
   6. The Chinese speak Chinese. ___
   7. Brazilians speak Portuguese. ___
   8. Americans speak English. ___
   9. Czechs speak Polish. ___

2. Complete the sentences.
   ◦ China is in The Far ______.
   1. Scotland is in Great ______.
   2. Hungary is in ______.
   3. Mexico is in _______ America.
   4. Thailand is in The ______ East.
   5. Argentina is in _______ America.
   6. Egypt is in ______.
   7. Saudi Arabia is in ______.
   8. India is in ______.
   9. Australia is in ______.

3. Write the names of the countries and languages.

![Map of Europe and Asia with numbered countries]

   ◦ E __________, English
   1. F __________
   2. G __________
   3. S __________
   4. P __________
   5. I __________
   6. The C __________
   7. P __________
   8. H __________
   9. R __________
   10. G __________
   11. T __________

4. Complete the boxes with nationalities ending in these letters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-ian</th>
<th>-ish</th>
<th>-an</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Italian</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Test yourself. Cover the nationalities and languages in the table on page 18. Look at the countries and say the nationalities and languages.
5 I can use classroom vocabulary

1. Tick (✓) the things you can put in a bag. Put a cross (X) by the things you can’t.
   - pen ✓
   - board X
   - desk
   - bag
   - CD player and CD
   - pen
   - pencil sharpener
   - ruler
   - pencil
   - folder
   - piece of paper
   - rubber
   - notebook
   - dictionary
   - table
   - chair
   - cassette player

2. Add another word to make a longer word or phrase.
   - notebook ➔ note
   - board ➔ board
   - cassette ➔ cassette
   - notice ➔ notice
   - pencil ➔ pencil
   - CD ➔ CD

3. ABOUT YOU Write four things you’ve got at home, and four things you haven’t got.
   - I’ve got a dictionary. ➔ I haven’t got a cassette player.

4. Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.
6 I can use English language words

- There are eight words in the first sentence, and thirteen in the second.
- Walk is a regular verb; the past simple is walked.
- Speak is an irregular verb. The past simple is spoke, and the past participle is spoken. (The past participle is used to form the present perfect.)

1 Circle the correct answer.
   - A and the are adjectives/articles.
   - A and an are definite/indefinite articles.
   - Woman is a noun/sentence.
   - Up is a preposition/pronoun.
   - Speak is a regular/an irregular verb.

2 Find the answers for each sentence.
   - a verb 
     - I have three English lessons every week. 
     - There's a young man from Rome in the class.
     - Today, he asked a question, and he spoke quickly.
     - I think he's in the wrong class.
     - a plural noun 
     - 1 a pronoun
     - 3 an adjective
     - 4 a preposition
     - 7 an adverb
     - 8 an irregular past simple
     - 10 a singular noun
     - 11 a sentence
7 I can ask and answer questions about language

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What does ‘dreadful’ mean?</td>
<td>I don’t know. = It’s a new word for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not What means ‘dreadful’?)</td>
<td>on It means ‘terrible’.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What’s this called in English?</td>
<td>I can’t remember. = I knew the word yesterday. but I don’t know it today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>on It’s a stamp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How do you say ‘passport’ in English?</td>
<td>Passport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could you explain ‘no vacancies’?</td>
<td>Yes, you see it in a hotel window. It means the hotel is full. There are no free rooms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not ‘Could you explain me…?)</td>
<td>What’s the difference between ‘hello’ and ‘hi’? The meaning is the same, but ‘hi’ is informal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What’s the opposite of ‘large’?</td>
<td>Small.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How do you pronounce ‘May’?</td>
<td>/meɪ/, like ‘day’.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Right’ is pronounced /ɑːt/. Is that right? or Is that correct?</td>
<td>No, that’s wrong. on That’s not right. It’s pronounced /ɑːt/.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How do you spell ‘apple’?</td>
<td>I’m not sure. Is it one ‘p’ or two? or A-double P-I-E, (double P = two Ps)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

1 How do you spell your name? ☑ c
2 How do you say ‘cup’ in German? ☑ a
3 What’s the opposite of ‘closed’? ☑ d
4 What does ‘tiny’ mean? ☑ b
5 Could you explain “How are you?” ☑ g
6 ‘Question’ and ‘answer’ mean the same. Is that right? ☑ f

2 Complete the questions.

What does ‘awful’ mean? ~ ‘Terrible’ or ‘dreadful’.
1 What’s this ____________ in English? ~ It’s a frying pan.
2 How do you ____________ ‘tomato’? ~ /tomə’təʊ/.
3 ____________ you spell ‘eye’? ~ I’m not sure. I think it’s E-Y-E.
4 What’s the difference ____________ ‘bye’ and ‘goodbye’? ~ ‘Bye’ is more informal.
5 ‘Pen’ is the same as ‘pencil’. Is that ____________? ~ No, that’s wrong.
6 What’s the ____________ of ‘interesting’? ~ Boring.
7 ____________ ‘enormous’ mean? ~ It means ‘very big’.
8 Could you ____________ ‘EXIT’? ~ You see it on a door. It means that you can go out there.
Review: Basic English

Unit 1

Do the maths. Write the answer in words.

1. ten plus seven = seventeen
2. eight minus three = five
3. three plus nine = twelve
4. four plus eleven = fifteen
5. nineteen minus six = thirteen
6. eighty-seven minus eight = seventy-nine
7. ninety-five plus seventeen = one hundred and one
8. thirty-five minus eight = twenty-seven
9. a hundred and five plus seventy = one hundred and thirty-five
10. three hundred minus fourteen = two hundred and eighty-six
11. twenty-eight plus thirteen = forty-one
12. one thousand minus forty-seven = nine hundred and fifty-three

Unit 2

Write the times in the box under the clocks. Then add 15 minutes to each time.
Write the new times with past or to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>five past eleven</th>
<th>twenty-five past two</th>
<th>ten to eight</th>
<th>midnight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. ten to eight
2. five past eight
3. ten to eight
4. five past eight
5. five past eight
6. ten to eight
7. five past eight

Unit 3

1. Complete the sentences.
   A What's the __________ today?
   B The fifth __________ October.
2. A I don't like January.
   B Why?
   A Because it's the coldest __________ of the __________.
3. A Which __________ do you like best?
   B Summer.
4. A It's my __________ today.
   B Really? How old are you?
   A I'm going to California on New __________ ____________
   B Fantastic!

REVIEW: BASIC ENGLISH  23
2 Write the answers.

What's the 1st day of the week? **Monday**
1 What's the 3rd month of the year? **March**
2 What's the 3rd season of the year in Britain? **Summer**
3 What's the 4th day of the week? **Thursday**
4 What's the 5th month of the year? **April**
5 What's the 6th day of the week? **Saturday**
6 What's the 7th month of the year? **August**
7 What's the 9th month of the year? **November**
8 What's the 11th month of the year? **January**

Unit 4

1 Write the first letter of each word. Remember, countries and nationalities begin with capital letters. Then write C for 'country' or N for 'nationality'.

- Saudi **N**
- China **N**
- Britain **C**
- Egypt **C**
- Italy **C**
- Hungary **N**
- Mexico **N**
- Swiss **C**
- Greek **C**

2 Complete the text.

My name's Magda, and I'm studying **English** in London at the moment. I'm from Po_______ (1), and I live with two students: Silvia, who's from **Spain** (2), and Irina who's from the **Czech Republic** (3). Irina speaks **Spanish** (4) and **Polish** (5). We go to a language school in the centre. Our class has many nationalities: there are two **Japanese** (6) students, a **Korean** (7), three **Turkish** (8) men, a young **Italian** (9) girl, a **Chinese** (10) boy and four students from **Spanish** (11). Our teacher is Dennis, and he's **Australian** (12).

Unit 5

Write your answers.

You put your things in this, a **bag**
1 The teacher writes on this in the classroom, **blackboard**
2 You use this if you make a mistake, **rubber**
3 You put notices on this, **bulletin board**
4 You find the meaning of words in this, **dictionary**
5 You sharpen pencils with this, **sharpen**
6 You write new vocabulary in this, **notebook**
7 You listen to CDs on this, **stereo**
8 You sit on this, **chair**
9 You sit at one of these, **desk** or **chair**
10 You can put pieces of paper in this, **envelope**

24 REVIEW: BASIC ENGLISH
Unit 6

Find 12 more English language words in the square. Write them in the correct spaces below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>E</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I come from France.________________________
2. Quickly, slowly________________________
3. In, from, on________________________
4. Good afternoon, at school________________________
5. Walk(ed), look(ed), listen(ed)________________________
6. A, an, the________________________
7. He, I, they________________________
8. Table, go, very________________________
9. Different, old, big________________________
10. Boy (not boys)________________________
11. Do (did), go (went)________________________
12. Girls (not girl)________________________

Unit 7

Answer the questions. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1. What does terrible mean? It means very bad or dreadful.
2. What’s the opposite of correct? __________________________
3. What’s the difference between spelling and pronunciation? __________________________
4. How do you say hello in your language? __________________________
5. How do you pronounce explain? __________________________
6. Tiny means the same as enormous. Is that right? __________________________
7. What’s this called in English? __________________________
8. How do you spell? __________________________

REVIEW: BASIC ENGLISH  25
8 I can give personal information

Sandro is studying English in Cambridge. The receptionist needs some information.

RECEPTIONIST  SANDRO
What’s your family name?  Bertoli.
And your first name?  Sandro.
Could I have your address?  45 Alfred Road.
And the postcode?  CB2 4TX.

Now the receptionist is asking Sandro about himself and his family.

So, Sandro, where are you from?  ~ Italy.
(Or Where do you come from?)
Whereabouts in Italy?  ~ Pisa.
(Or Where in Italy exactly?)
What do you do in Pisa?  ~ I’m a doctor.
(Or What’s your job?)
And are you married or single?  ~ I’m married.
Have you got any children?  ~ Yes. A boy and a girl.
How old are they?  ~ The boy’s six and the girl’s two.

1 In each question, one word is in the wrong place. Correct it.

uestra tu nombre de familia. ~ Bertoli.  
¿Cuál es tu primer nombre? Sandro. 
Puedo tener tu dirección? 45 Alfred Road. 
¿Cuál es tu código postal? CB2 4TX.

Ahora la recepcionista está preguntando a Sandro sobre sí mismo y su familia.

Entonces, Sandro, ¿dónde estás? ~ Italia. 
(¿Dónde vienes?)
¿Dónde estás exactamente en Italia? ~ Pisa. 
(¿Dónde en Italia?)
¿Qué haces en Pisa? ~ Soy un doctor. 
(¿Qué haces?)
¿Estás casado o soltero? ~ Estoy casado. 
¿Tienes hijos? ~ Sí. Un niño y una niña. 
¿Cuántos años tienen? ~ El niño tiene seis y la niña dos.

1 En cada pregunta, una palabra está mal escrita. Corrígala.

1. ¿Estás casado? ~ ¿Estás casado?
2. ¿Dónde estás? ~ Dónde estás en tu país?
3. ¿Tienes dirección? ~ ¿Tienes dirección?
4. ¿Tienes familia? ~ ¿Tienes familia?
5. ¿Tienes teléfono? ~ ¿Tienes teléfono?
6. ¿Cuántos hijos tienes? ~ ¿Cuántos hijos tienes?
7. ¿Cuántos años tienes? ~ ¿Cuántos años tienes?

2 Complete the questions. (You will answer these questions in Exercise 3.)

1. I need some information.  ABOUT YOU
   1. What’s your __________ name? ~ Kovacs.
   2. And your __________ name? ~ Zsuzsa.
   3. Where are you __________? ~ Hungary.
   4. __________? ~ The capital, Budapest.
   5. And __________ I have your address? ~ Tarcali utca 27.
   6. And the __________? ~ 1113.
   7. And what __________ do you do? ~ I’m an engineer.
   8. And __________? ~ No, I’m still single.
   9. How __________ are you? ~ I’m 27.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions above, or ask another student.
9 I can fill in a form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>ABOUT YOU</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>single or married man</td>
<td>Mr</td>
<td>Miss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>married woman</td>
<td>Mrs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>single woman</td>
<td>Miss</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>single or married woman</td>
<td>Ms</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>family name</td>
<td>surname</td>
<td>Rodriguez</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first name(s)</td>
<td>forename(s)</td>
<td>Maria Helena</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day, month, and year you were born</td>
<td>date of birth</td>
<td>12 June 1985</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nationality</td>
<td></td>
<td>Argentinian</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first language</td>
<td>mother tongue</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone number during the day</td>
<td>daytime tel</td>
<td>[54] 11 4302 8000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no means “number”</td>
<td>mobile no</td>
<td>0341 241248</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not email number</td>
<td>email address</td>
<td><a href="mailto:maletas@latinou.com.ar">maletas@latinou.com.ar</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>married or single?</td>
<td>marital status</td>
<td>single</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job</td>
<td>occupation</td>
<td>sports teacher</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elementary? Intermediate? etc.</td>
<td>level of English</td>
<td>elementary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tick = ✓</td>
<td>(please tick)</td>
<td>intermediate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>advanced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your written name</td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>Maria Rodriguez</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. True or false? Write T or F.

- Miss = married or single woman        F
- occupation = married or single       
- Mrs = married woman                  
- Mr = single or married man           
- surname = first name                 
- tick = ✓                             
- forename = family name               
- level = write your name              
- marital status = married or single  
- mother tongue = mother’s name        
- email address = where you live       
- date of birth = today’s date         
- daytime tel = phone number during the day

2. ABOUT YOU Write your information in the table above.

3. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?
10 I can talk about my family

A Family tree

All the people here are Damon’s relatives.
Luke is Dave and Maggie’s son.
Karen is Dave and Maggie’s daughter.
Maggie is Dave’s wife.
Dave is Maggie’s husband.
Elsie and Alf are Maggie’s parents (= mother and father).

1 Complete the sentences about Damon’s family.

1 Paul is Elsie and Alf’s ______.
2 Maggie is Elsie’s ______.
3 Jessica is Maggie’s ______.
4 Maggie is Jane’s ______.
5 Karen is Jessica’s ______.
6 Paul is Jane’s ______.
7 Elsie is Jessica’s ______.
8 Paul is Luke’s ______.
9 Maggie is Jessica’s ______.
10 James, Maggie, and Alf are Damon’s ______.

2 Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MALE</th>
<th>FEMALE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>father</td>
<td>mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 brother</td>
<td>2 husband</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 nephew</td>
<td>4 relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 son</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 brother-in-law</td>
<td>7 grandfather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 grandson</td>
<td>9 cousin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 parent</td>
<td>11 uncle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 [ ] Test yourself. Cover the male words in Exercise 2. Look at the female words. Say the male words.

ABOUT YOU Draw your family tree. Write the names and brother, sister, uncle, etc.
B Family history

My parents got married 25 years ago. Two years later, my brother, Luke, was born. Then I was born a year after that. I've also got a sister, Karen, who is two years younger than me, so there are five of us in my family. Luke's got a girlfriend, Sue, and they live in a small flat. Karen and I still live with our mum and dad. We spend a lot of time together.

Glossary

get married become husband and wife (get divorced stop being husband and wife)
be born start your life
have got have there are five of us so we are five
friend see picture below
mum or mother
dad or father
spend time with someone be with someone and do things with them
together with each other

5 True or false? Write T or F.

Damon is Luke's older brother. F
1 Damon's parents are divorced. ______
2 Damon was born after Luke. ______
3 Luke is younger than Karen. ______
4 Luke and Sue live together. ______
5 Luke's mum has two sons. ______
6 Damon is Sue's boyfriend. ______
7 There are four in Damon's family. ______
8 Karen is the youngest in the family. ______
9 Damon and Karen are often together. ______

6 Write the words in correct sentences.

his / divorced / are / parents

The parents are divorced.
1 born / / 1989 / in / was ______
2 spend / of / together / we / lot / time / a ______
3 older / my / than / girlfriend / me / is ______
4 in / of / my / of / are / family / there / us ______
5 the / family / / youngest / in / my / am ______
6 brother / younger / / ve got / sister / an / older / and / a / / ______

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.
1 How many people are there in your family? ______
2 When were you born? ______
3 Have you got any brothers and sisters? If yes, are they older or younger than you? ______
4 In your family, who do you spend a lot of time with? ______
5 Do you all live together? ______
I can describe physical actions

A Using your body

spotlight Irregular verbs

The verbs sit, stand, run, fall, ride, lie and get are irregular. The past simple of these verbs is not formed by adding ed. There is a list of the past simple and past participle forms of all the irregular verbs in the book on page 202.

1 Write the present form of the verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>walked</th>
<th>rode</th>
<th>got on</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sat down</td>
<td>stood up</td>
<td>fell over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie down</td>
<td>climbed</td>
<td>ran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fell over</td>
<td>sat down</td>
<td>stood up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the sentences. You need the past simple in sentences 6 – 9.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I slept</th>
<th>3 rode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lay down</td>
<td>climbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fell over</td>
<td>sat down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stood up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The children have to _________ up when the teacher comes into the classroom.
2 I often _________ to work in the summer – it's only twenty minutes on foot.
3 I want to _________ Mount Kilimanjaro next year.
4 Do you often _________ when you go to nightclubs?
5 The doctor asked me to _________ down on the bed.
6 The boys _________ into the swimming pool.
7 She _________ her bike to school this morning.
8 I was late, so I _________ to the bus stop, but I _________ over.
9 She _________ off the bus, went into the station and _________ a train.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and say the verb for each picture.
B Using your hands

push
hold \ held
put something down \ put
touch
pick something up
turn on
give \ gave
drop
break \ broke
close/shut \ shut \ open

4 Make words from the letters.
1. ivge
2. rccay
3. nprt fof
4. tpu wornd
5. seloc
6. thruc
7. kipc pu
8. kbr
9. dlo\n10. uphs
11. thsu
12. plnoe

5 Can you do these things with one hand or do you need two? Write 1 or 2.

1. shut a dictionary
2. give someone five dictionaries
3. touch a bicycle
4. pull your hair
5. turn off a radio
6. drop a ruler
7. pick up a TV
8. carry a door
9. open a bottle
10. break a ruler
11. turn on a TV
12. close a door
13. hold a bottle
14. hold a baby

6 Test yourself. Cover the words and say the verb for each picture.
12 I can name parts of the body 🔄

1. head
2. face
3. hair
4. eye
5. ear
6. nose
7. cheek
8. chin
9. neck
10. shoulder

11. mouth
12. lip
13. tooth (plural teeth)

1. True or false? Write T or F.
   I've got two …
   ▶ eyes ✓
   ▶ necks ✗
   ▶ 1 noses ✓
   ▶ 2 lips ✓
   ▶ 3 ears ✓
   ▶ 4 waists ✗
   ▶ 5 knees ✓
   ▶ 6 shoulders ✓
   ▶ 7 backs ✓
   ▶ 8 thumbs ✓
   ▶ 9 hands ✓
   ▶ 10 wrists ✓
   ▶ 11 ankles ✓
   ▶ 12 heads ✓
   ▶ 13 arms ✓
   ▶ 14 wrists ✓
   ▶ 15 mouths ✓

2. Which one is different? Circle it.
   ▶ finger
   ▶ thumb
   ▶ (waist)
   ▶ hand
   ▶ 1 foot
   ▶ wrist
   ▶ toe
   ▶ ankle
   ▶ 1 arm
   ▶ hand
   ▶ wrist
   ▶ stomach
   ▶ 1 neck
   ▶ ears
   ▶ nose
   ▶ lips
   ▶ 1 shoulder
   ▶ chest
   ▶ neck
   ▶ bottom

3. Complete the words.
   ▶ 1 r
   ▶ 4 t
   ▶ 8 m
   ▶ 1 c
   ▶ 5 k
   ▶ 9 w
   ▶ 2 h
   ▶ 6 e
   ▶ 7 n

4. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Name the parts of the body.
13 I can describe people

A General description

How tall is he? He's 175 cms (tall).

How much does she weigh? She weighs about 60 kgs.

tall average height short

slim average weight overweight

He's [very] good-looking. (very) attractive.

She's beautiful. (very) attractive.

He's [not very] attractive.

1 True or false? Write T or F.

▸ If you are overweight, you aren't slim. T
1 Average height means not tall and not short. ___
2 Attractive and good-looking mean the same. ___
3 You can say a man is good-looking or beautiful. ___
4 If someone is fat, they are overweight. ___
5 The answer to 'How much does he weigh?' is '200 cms'. ___
6 'How tall are you?' is correct. ___
7 It is polite to call someone fat and ugly. ___
8 Thin and slim mean the same, but thin is more positive. ___

2 Complete the dialogues. Don’t use the words in italics in your answer.

▸ Is he attractive? – Yes, he’s ____________________________.
1 She's not tall or short, really. – No, she's average ____________________________.
2 Are the two brothers attractive? – Yes, they're both ____________________________.
3 Is she quite thin? – Yes, she’s very ____________________________.
4 He's about average weight. – Yes, he ____________________________ 75 kgs.
5 Is he overweight? – Yes, he’s a bit ____________________________.
6 Is she very attractive? – Yes, she’s ____________________________.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
### B Hair and eyes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How long?</th>
<th>What colour?</th>
<th>What kind?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>blonde</td>
<td>straight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medium-length</td>
<td>light brown</td>
<td>curly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>dark brown</td>
<td>wavy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grey</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>black</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

She's got

- brown eyes
- green eyes
- blue eyes

He's got

- a beard
- a moustache

4. Cross out the adjective you don’t need.
   - She's got long, dark brown, black hair. (or She's got long, dark-brown, black hair.)
   1. I've got medium-length, short, curly hair.
   2. Her hair is short, blonde, light brown, and wavy.
   3. My sister's hair is short, long, and curly.
   4. My brother's got short, grey, black hair and a moustache.
   5. My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair.

5. Complete the questions. (You will write your answers in Exercise 6.)

   - Is your hair brown? Is it dark brown or light brown?
   - Is your hair long, m________, or s________?
   - What colour is it: bl________, bl________, br______, or g______?
   - Is your hair st______, w______, or c______?
   - Have you got a b______ or a m______?
   - Have you got br______ eyes?

   **ABOUT YOU**

   - Yes, it’s blonde.
   - ______________________
   - ______________________
   - ______________________
   - ______________________
   - ______________________
   - ______________________

   **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5. Then, if possible, tell another person about yourself.

   - I’ve got long, dark hair and...
C How old are they?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Word/phrase</th>
<th>Other phrases for age</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18 months; before</td>
<td>a baby</td>
<td>in his teens (13 → about 17)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they can walk</td>
<td></td>
<td>in her early twenties (20 → 23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 → 10 or 11</td>
<td>a child plural children</td>
<td>in his mid-thirties (34 → 41)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 → about 17</td>
<td>a teenager or a young person plural young people</td>
<td>in her late thirties (41 → 50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 →</td>
<td>an adult</td>
<td>late fifties (57 → 59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about 45 → 60</td>
<td>a middle-aged person</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 →</td>
<td>an elderly man or woman (more polite than old)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 Match 1 – 8 with a – i.

| 1 me (45)         | a elderly                    |
| 2 my wife (38)    | b in her late thirties      |
| 3 my son (6 months) | c a teenager                |
| 4 my daughter (7) | d in my mid-fourties ✓      |
| 5 my brother (47) | e a baby                     |
| 6 my nephew (14)  | f in her early sixties      |
| 7 my aunt (63)    | g an adult                   |
| 8 my father (79)  | h middle-aged                |
| 9 my niece (21)  | i a child                    |

8 ABOUT YOU Write the names of people in your family, or tell another student.

| 1 a baby Marcus (sister’s son) | 4 an elderly woman            |
| 2 a young person               | 5 an elderly man              |
| 3 a middle-aged person         | 6 a baby                      |
|                                | 7 someone in his/her fifties | 8 someone in his/her sixties |

9 Test yourself. Cover column two of the table. Look at the ‘age’ column and say the words and phrases.

10 Read the police description. Which man are the police looking for, X or Y?

The man we are looking for is in his mid-thirties. He is slim, with dark brown curly hair and a moustache. If you see him, please ring the police on 0088 997 4422.

11 Write a description of the other man. Use the text above to help you.

The other man is
# I can talk about character

## A What’s he/she like? 🌟

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>friendly</td>
<td>The students in my class are all really friendly: it’s great.</td>
<td>happy to meet and talk to other people on unfriendly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>He visited me a lot in hospital, which was really kind.</td>
<td>warm, friendly and always wanting to help other people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>I met Colin on holiday and he’s a really nice guy.</td>
<td>kind and friendly (a very important word in spoken English) synonym pleasant; see horrible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fun</td>
<td>I love Karen; she’s great fun.</td>
<td>something or someone that makes you happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>funny</td>
<td>John makes me laugh – he’s just a really funny man.</td>
<td>making you laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relaxed</td>
<td>My parents are very relaxed: they don’t get angry if I’m late.</td>
<td>calm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clever</td>
<td>Tom is very clever – the best student in our class.</td>
<td>able to learn and understand very quickly synonym intelligent; see stupid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiet</td>
<td>She’s quiet, but she can be funny.</td>
<td>someone who is quiet doesn’t say very much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serious</td>
<td>I like our teacher but she’s very serious.</td>
<td>someone who is serious thinks a lot and doesn’t laugh very much</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Complete the words.

   - fin
   - n-e
   - t
   - d-x-d
   - y
   - r

2. Answer the questions.

   **What’s...**

   1. a synonym for nice? pleasant
   2. the opposite of friendly?
   3. a synonym for clever?
   4. the opposite of nice?
   5. makes you laugh?
   6. thinks a lot and doesn’t laugh a lot?
   7. is usually calm?
   8. always wants to help others?

   **What do you call someone who...**

   1. likes meeting and talking to people? friendly
   2. He’s nice, but he’s very ___________. He doesn’t laugh much.
   3. Ana’s parents like? – Well, her mother’s great ___________; I like her very much. But her father doesn’t like people very much – he’s really ___________.
   4. was your grandmother like? – She was very ___________ – she always helped everyone. And she was ___________ too. She went to university.

3. Complete the conversations.

   - He’s nice, but he’s very ___________. He doesn’t laugh much.
   - Well, her mother’s great ___________; I like her very much. But her father doesn’t like people very much – he’s really ___________.
   - She was very ___________ – she always helped everyone. And she was ___________ too. She went to university.
B We like each other

WHY WE LIKE each other

Gemma: "I met Sophie at university. I was on my own, and she came up and talked to me; she’s like that. What’s interesting is that we’re complete opposites. She’s very happy to meet new people, but I’m really shy; she’s very sociable, I’m quiet; she’s sporty, and I’m not. But it wasn’t important. We became friends and shared a flat for two years. I’m very organized and did most of the housework. Sophie’s not very tidy, and she can be lazy around the house. But she’s a great cook and a really nice person."

Glossary

on my own alone or without other people be complete opposites be very different shy If you’re shy, you can’t talk easily to people you don’t know.

sociable friendly and liking to talk to people sporty liking sport and good at it share a flat live in the same flat as another person organized An organized person plans things well.
tidy A tidy person likes everything to be in the right place. untidy lazy A lazy person doesn’t like working, or hardworking

spotlight 

really Really is important in spoken English. It means ‘very’ and you can use it before most adjectives.

I’m in a really nice class.

She was really horrible to me.

4 Find and write four more examples of really + adjective from page 36.

really kind
really clever
really happy
really sad

5 Read the text again. Are these statements true or false? Write T or F.

Sophie likes sport. T F
1 Gemma was alone when she met Sophie. T F
2 Gemma and Sophie are very different. T F
3 Sophie likes meeting new people. T F
4 They lived together at university. T F
5 Gemma’s sociable. T F
6 Sophie’s very unfriendly. T F
7 Sophie’s untidy. T F
8 Gemma doesn’t plan things. T F

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

What are you like? Are you ...

1 sporty or not sporty? T F
2 a very relaxed person? T F
3 usually tidy or untidy? T F
4 lazy or hardworking? T F
5 quiet or very sociable? T F
6 a very organized person? T F

PEOPLE 37
15 I can describe relationships

A Romantic relationships 📖

Max is my partner, and we have a very good relationship. We've been together for about two years. I started to go out with him after I came to London. We met at my ex-boyfriend's house, and because Max lived near me, it was easy for us to get to know each other. Now Max wants us to get married and have a baby, but I'm not sure. I have friends who are happily married, but I also know married couples who have split up and are now divorced. I don't want that to happen to us.

Glossary

**partner** someone you have a romantic relationship with
(your boyfriend, girlfriend, wife, or husband)

**be together** be in a romantic relationship

**go out with someone** have a romantic relationship with someone

**ex-boyfriend** a person who was your boyfriend in the past
(also ex-girlfriend, ex-wife, ex-husband)

**get to know someone** learn about and become friends with someone

**get married** become husband and wife

**have a baby** become a new mother/father

**couple** two people, often in a romantic relationship

**split up** stop having a romantic relationship

**divorced** married in the past but not now

You have a relationship with someone. It can be good or bad.
I have a good relationship with my flatmate.
He has a difficult relationship with his father.
We often talk about romantic relationships with wives, boyfriends, etc.

1 Write the words in correct sentences.
   ▶ They want to get married.
   1. baby / last / had / a / year / they __________________________
   2. split up / January / they / in __________________________
   3. have / good / a / very / relationship / we __________________________
   4. you / how / get to know / did / ? __________________________
   5. three / together / for / they / years / were __________________________
   6. with / six / went / him / months / I / for / out __________________________

2 Complete the sentences.
   ▶ They have ________ a very good relationship.
   1. When did they ________ a baby?
   2. My boyfriend and I have been ________ for two months.
   3. I know Phil and Sue very well. They're a lovely ________.
   4. She went ________ with him last year, but they split ________ in January.
   5. Sonia is his ________ girlfriend, but they still talk to each other.
   6. My parents were married for twenty years, but now they're ________. My father has a new ________, but I don't think they're going to ________ married.
**B Friends**

**WHY WE LIKE each other**

Sophie: "I get on very well with Gemma – she's great. I don't know why, because we're completely different. We first met at university, and then we became flatmates. If I have a problem, Gemma is the first person I ask for advice – and she always gives me good advice. We don't see each other very often now, because we live in different parts of the country, but I've known her for a long time, and she will always be my closest friend."

**Glossary**

- get on (well) with someone: have a good relationship with someone
- meet / met: see and speak to someone for the first time
- become flatmates: start to be flatmates (also become friends)
- flatmate: person you live with, but not in a romantic relationship
- advice: opinion or information that you give to help someone with a problem (You give advice or you give someone advice.
- see someone: talk to or visit someone
- know someone: be friends with someone or have met them
- closest friend: most important friend (also best friend)

**Spotlight each other**

Pam and Mike really loved each other.
(Pam loved Mike, and Mike loved Pam.)
The two girls never listen to each other.
(A doesn't listen to B, and B doesn't listen to A.)

---

3 Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>We met last year.</th>
<th>I have known her for a year.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>We live near each other.</td>
<td>We are flatmates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>We don't get on very well.</td>
<td>We have a very good relationship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I see her every Saturday.</td>
<td>I meet her every Saturday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>She's my best friend.</td>
<td>She's my closest friend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>We became friends.</td>
<td>We stopped being friends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>She gives me advice.</td>
<td>She helps me with my problems.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 About You: Write your answers or ask another student.

1. Who is your closest friend? ____________________________
2. How long have you known him/her? ____________________________
3. Where did you meet? ____________________________
4. How did you get to know him/her? ____________________________
5. How often do you see each other? ____________________________
6. Why do you get on well with him/her? ____________________________
16 I can say how I feel

A Physical feelings 🎧

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word/phrase</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What's the matter?</td>
<td>What's the matter? ~ Nothing.</td>
<td>What's the problem?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel tired</td>
<td>I feel tired. I'm going to bed.</td>
<td>want to rest or sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel hungry</td>
<td>I'm hungry. Is there anything to eat?</td>
<td>want something to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel thirsty</td>
<td>I'm thirsty. Can I have a juice?</td>
<td>want something to drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel boiling</td>
<td>I'm boiling. Can we open a window?</td>
<td>very, very hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel freezing</td>
<td>Where's my coat? I'm freezing.</td>
<td>very, very cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel nervous</td>
<td>Did you feel nervous before the exam?</td>
<td>~ Yes, I did, but it was OK.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel ill</td>
<td>He felt ill after the meal. I think he had too much to eat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not be/feel well</td>
<td>He doesn't feel well, so I told him to go to bed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 How do you feel? Write your answers.

- You're outside. It's -10 degrees. ___________ 
- It's the end of a working day. ___________
- It's minutes before an important exam. ___________
- You've had nothing to drink for hours. ___________
- You've had nothing to eat for hours. ___________
- You're working. It's 35 degrees. ___________
- Your body temperature is 39.5 degrees. ___________

2 Complete the dialogues.

- When's lunch? ~ I don't know. Are you ___________ ?
- What's the ___________ ? ~ I ___________.
- Are you ___________? ~ Yes, I'm going to bed.
- What's the ___________? ~ I'm ___________. I need a coat.
- It's very hot in here. ~ Yes, I know. I'm ___________.
- Is it your driving test tomorrow? ~ Yes, and I'm feeling a bit ___________.
- ___________ the matter? ~ I don't feel ___________.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and examples, and look at the meaning. Can you say the words?
B Emotions

1. He's happy.
2. She's sad. syn: unhappy
3. He's excited.
4. She's worried.
5. He's angry.
6. She's frightened. syn: scared
7. He's embarrassed.
8. She's surprised.
9. He's in love.
10. She's upset.

Complete the words.

- ha ___
- ang ___
- wor ___
- up ___
- sca ___
- sur ___
- fri ___
- unh ___
- emb ___
- ex ___

Complete the sentences.

1. I was ___ when I heard that her mother was very ill.
2. I got 100% in my English exam. I was very happy but also very ___.
3. I got very ___ yesterday because I couldn't find my credit card. I found it this morning.
4. My brothers get very ___ when they're watching football on TV.
5. I made a stupid mistake and everyone laughed. I felt very ___.
6. My sister and Joe are getting married. My parents are ___ because they like him.
7. I was very ___ when my boyfriend found a new girlfriend.
8. My aunt never travels by plane. She's ___ of flying.
9. They met on holiday. I think they're in ___.

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
Review: People

Unit 8

Complete the dialogue using information in the notes to help you.

A. Helena Costa
B. Rua da Marquesa de Santos 63
C. São Paulo
D. 05065 – 002
E. Brazil
F. Art teacher
G. Married: one son, Marco, 7

A. Oh, where in Brazil?
B. São Paulo.
A. Right, and could your address?
B. It's Rua da Marquesa de Santos 63, São Paulo.
A. And the ?
B. It's 05065-002.
A. And what do you ?
B. I'm an art teacher.
A. Oh, really? And ?
B. Yes, I am. And I've got a son.
A. Oh, is he?
B. He's seven.

Unit 9

Find 11 more words, phrases, or short words from the unit. You can go up, down, or across.

M A R I T A L  S T A T U S
O C C U P A T I O N
E X U
T D I C K G G M L R
H A E F O R E N A M E I N
E T M A I L W O M R O S A
R E A P L A D D R E S S M
T O N G U E D A Y T I M E
Y B I R T H S I N G L E

A G O R E L A T I V E S
G S J O G Y W E S G T I
K I D A U G H T E R D O
O S Y M E F O T N A U M
A T B X H U S B A N D I
U E R I C U N L D O
N R B R O T H E R F U N
T I P W U N C L E I A I
L N O I S T I C A T M U
O L W F I S N E P H E W
P A R E N T S J O E T I
R W U N I E C E E R F A

42 REVIEW: PEOPLE
2 Correct one mistake in each sentence.

1. He's eighteen years. \textbf{\textit{He is eighteen.}}
2. My brother has eighteen years old. \textbf{\textit{My brother is eighteen years old.}}
3. I born in 1990. \textbf{\textit{I was born in 1990.}}
4. My sister is younger that me. \textbf{\textit{My sister is younger than me.}}
5. His parents are divorce. \textbf{\textit{His parents are divorced.}}
6. There are five of we in my family. \textbf{\textit{There are five of us in my family.}}
7. She is more old than her brother. \textbf{\textit{She is older than her brother.}}
8. Who is the youngest of the family? \textbf{\textit{Who is the youngest member of the family?}}

Unit 11

1. Complete the table with the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>push</th>
<th>walk</th>
<th>pick something up</th>
<th>stand up</th>
<th>hold</th>
<th>pull</th>
<th>jump</th>
<th>carry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>drop</td>
<td>turn something off</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>put something down</td>
<td>climb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Using your hands</th>
<th>Using your feet or legs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>push</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Circle the correct word.

1. You get \textbf{\textit{in}} a bus's house.
2. You can open \textbf{\textit{a}} door's light.
3. You can touch \textbf{\textit{a}} wall.
4. You can turn on \textbf{\textit{a}} radio.
5. You can pick up \textbf{\textit{a}} bicycle.
6. You can hold \textbf{\textit{a bag/}} classroom.
7. You can break \textbf{\textit{some juice/}} pencil.
8. You can climb \textbf{\textit{a tree/}} bus.
9. You can close \textbf{\textit{a TV/}} book.
10. You can sit down on \textbf{\textit{a bed/}} sea.

Unit 12

1. Above or below the waist? Write A (above) or B (below).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>foot</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>2 ankle</th>
<th>5 shoulder</th>
<th>8 knee</th>
<th>11 bottom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>head</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>3 foot</td>
<td>6 chin</td>
<td>9 toes</td>
<td>12 neck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ears</td>
<td></td>
<td>4 chest</td>
<td>7 leg</td>
<td>10 nose</td>
<td>13 mouth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Write another part of the body which is between the other two. Look at the example.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nose</th>
<th>mouth</th>
<th>chin</th>
<th>3 wrist</th>
<th>fingers</th>
<th>6 eyes</th>
<th>mouth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hand</td>
<td>shoulder</td>
<td>4 ankle</td>
<td>toes</td>
<td>2 chest</td>
<td>head</td>
<td>5 back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 13

1 Write about the people.

- She's tall, slim and attractive. She's got medium-length, dark brown hair. She's a teenager.
- a baby
- in your mid-twenties
- elderly
- in your late thirties
- a child

2 Put the words in order from young (1) to old (9).

in your early thirties
a teenager
middle-aged
a baby
in your mid-twenties
elderly
in your early sixties
in your late thirties
a child

Unit 14

1 Complete the table with words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Positive or negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>friendly</td>
<td>unfriendly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the dialogues.

- She's nice. – Yes, very ________.
- She doesn't do any work. – No, she's very ________.
- Does she meet new people easily? – No, she's very ________.
- Did you live in the same place? – Yes, we ________ a flat.
- I really like being with her. – Yes, she's great ________.
- She's clever, isn't she? – Yes, very ________.
- Were you with other people? – No, I was ________ ________ ________.
- She makes me laugh. – I know, she's very ________.
- She plans everything. – Yes, she's very ________.
Unit 15

1 Circle the correct word.

Lucy never knew John at a disco when she was just twenty. She (1) got/ went out with
him for a year. Then suddenly, one weekend, he took her to Paris where they got
(2) married/ to married. They have a very good (3) relation/ relationship, and they (4) get/ go
on well with each other's family, too. Last year, they (5) got/ had a baby girl called Paula.
They've been (6) together/ each other for eight years now. I don't think they will ever
split (7) off/ up, or (8) get/ go divorced, because they are a very happy (9) couple/ two.

2 Complete the questions with a verb from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>become</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>are</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x2</td>
<td>x2</td>
<td>x2</td>
<td>x2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

► Are they married?

1. How did you _________ to know Jack?
2. When did you _________ friends with Jana?
3. _________ Elena your closest friend?
4. Do you _________ your ex-boyfriend often?
5. Does your mother _________ you good advice?
6. How did you _________ flatmates?
7. Do you _________ on well with your sister?
8. _________ your cousin divorced?

Unit 16

1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

► He's frightend. _________
1. Why are they exited? ____________
2. I'm hangry. ____________
3. She was very suprised. ____________
4. I think he was embarassed. ____________
5. I'm very worrid. ____________
6. I feel tierd. ____________
7. She's scard of dogs. ____________
8. Is he nervos? ____________
9. What's the mater? ____________
10. She's thursty. ____________

2 Are these feelings positive or negative? Write P or N.

► She's very sad. _________
1. My daughter's excited about the dog. _________
2. She's really unhappy at the moment. _________
3. He was embarrassed about it. _________
4. I don't feel well. _________
5. It's freezing in this room. _________
6. My brother's in love. _________
7. He's scared of her. _________
8. I was very upset about it. _________
9. I felt nervous before I met him. _________
10. They're all happy. _________
17 I can describe my routine

A Weekdays (Monday to Friday)

What do you do on weekdays?

I usually get up at 7:00.
I have a shower.
I get dressed.
I have breakfast.
I usually leave home at 8:00.
I get to work at 8:30.
I finish work at 5:00.
I have dinner at 8:15.
I go to bed at 11:30.
I sleep seven hours a night.

1 Match the verbs in column 1 with words in columns 2 and 3. Write the sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>get up</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>before breakfast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>11 o'clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>seven hours</td>
<td>7:30 a.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>leave</td>
<td>dressed</td>
<td>at 6 p.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>finish</td>
<td>home</td>
<td>with my family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>dinner</td>
<td>a night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>breakfast</td>
<td>8:00 a.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>to bed</td>
<td>8:30 a.m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the questions with the correct verb. (You will write your answers in Exercise 3.)

ABOUT YOU

What time do you usually ______ in the morning?
1 Do you _______ dressed before or after breakfast?
2 Do you ______ a shower in the morning?
3 What time do you _______ home in the morning?
4 What time do you _______ to school/university/work?
5 Who do you _______ dinner with?
6 What time do you normally _______ to bed?

EVERYDAY LIFE
3 About you: Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.

4 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the sentences. Say the phrases.

B Weekends (Saturday and Sunday) 🎓

Glossary
- **at the weekend**: on Saturday and Sunday
- **during the week**: from Monday to Friday
- **stay in**: stay at home
- **once a week**: one time in every week
- **twice a week**: two times in every week
- **come round**: come to my home
- **go out**: leave home to go to a bar, cinema, restaurant, etc.
- **go shopping**: go to the shops to buy clothes, CDs, etc.
- **go to the gym**: go to the gym

During the week, I usually stay in after school. I often study in the evenings, watch TV, listen to music, or just talk to my friends. Once or twice a week, my boyfriend comes round and we have dinner together or go and see a film. At the weekend, I go out a lot more. On Saturday morning, I usually go shopping with a friend, or I go to the gym, and sometimes I study in the afternoon. I go out with my boyfriend in the evening. On Sundays, I get up late. We often go for a walk, and in the summer we play tennis.

5 Find nine more phrases. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across →.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the</th>
<th>shopping</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>for</th>
<th>a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>week</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>once</td>
<td>walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>during</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>twice</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay</td>
<td>tennis</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>shopping</td>
<td>at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>gym</td>
<td>the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>round</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>weekend</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Complete the sentences.

I go to a restaurant once or twice a week.
1. Do you want to ___________ shopping?

Come ___________ to my flat after work.
2. ___________

I can’t ___________ tennis this weekend.
3. ___________

Do you want to go ___________ on Saturday?
4. ___________

The week I usually stay ___________.
5. ___________

I’m really tired today because I went to bed ___________ last night.
6. ___________

What are you doing ___________ the weekend?
7. ___________

I go to the ___________ twice a week because I like to exercise.
8. ___________

I often ___________ the shopping very ___________, at 8.00 in the morning.
9. ___________

We often go and ___________ a film on Sunday.
10. ___________
### Frequency words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>always</th>
<th>often</th>
<th>sometimes</th>
<th>occasionally</th>
<th>hardly ever</th>
<th>never</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These adverbs go before the main verb (e.g. get up), but after an auxiliary verb (e.g. do, does, have, can or be).

I always get up late on Sundays.
Do you often go out in the evening?
We occasionally go for a walk.
I'm hardly ever ill.

**Spotlight**  
*every and all*

He goes out **every day** means 'he goes out on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday and Sunday'.

Be careful!
He works **every day** means 'he works from Monday to Sunday'.
He works **all day** means 'he works from 9.00 a.m. to 6.00 p.m.'

---

### 7 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I always go shopping on Saturdays.</td>
<td>I go shopping every Saturday.</td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I sometimes work at home.</td>
<td>I often work at home.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>She's hardly ever late for work.</td>
<td>She's rarely late for work.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>We often finish classes early.</td>
<td>We finish classes early every day.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>She always has a shower in the morning.</td>
<td>She has a shower every morning.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>In August we play tennis every day.</td>
<td>In August we play tennis all day.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### 8 Write the sentences using a word from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>every day</th>
<th>always</th>
<th>often</th>
<th>hardly ever</th>
<th>all day</th>
<th>occasionally</th>
<th>never</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Hiro goes to restaurants two or three times a week.</th>
<th>Hiro <strong>often</strong> goes to restaurants.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Haruko always gets up early.</td>
<td>Haruko <strong>always</strong> gets up early.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Hiro goes to the gym once a year.</td>
<td>Hiro goes to the gym <strong>once a year</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Haruko stays in seven nights a week.</td>
<td>Haruko stays in <strong>seven nights</strong> a week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Hiro studies from 9.00 to 5.00.</td>
<td>Hiro studies from <strong>9.00 to 5.00</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Haruko doesn't have a shower in the morning.</td>
<td>Haruko doesn't have a shower in the morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Hiro goes to the cinema about six times a year.</td>
<td>Hiro goes to the cinema <strong>about six times</strong> a year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### 9 ABOUT YOU True or false? If a sentence is false, change the word in bold to make it true.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I <strong>hardly ever</strong> play tennis.</th>
<th>False. I <strong>often</strong> play tennis.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I <strong>always</strong> have a shower before breakfast.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>I <strong>often</strong> go out on Friday evening.</td>
<td>False. I <strong>never</strong> go out on Friday evening.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I <strong>never</strong> listen to music in the evening.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>I <strong>rarely</strong> study on Sunday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>I <strong>sometimes</strong> watch TV at the weekend.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>I <strong>never</strong> work in the evening.</td>
<td>False. I <strong>usually</strong> work in the evening.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>I <strong>usually</strong> go shopping on Monday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>I <strong>occasionally</strong> go to the gym after dinner.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
18 I can talk about clothes

A Clothes

1 shirt  2 top  3 jumper  4 sweater  5 jeans  6 skirt  7 dress  8 T-shirt  9 jacket  10 suit  11 coat  12 raincoat

1 Complete the words.
   s___ t 1 j___ t 2 t___ s 3 j___ r 4 c___ t 5 r___ t 6 T___ t 7 d___ s 8 j___ s 9 s___ r

Spotlight: wear

I often wear jeans.
She isn't wearing a skirt today.
I wore a blue shirt yesterday.

2 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

B Colours

White  Cream  Yellow  Green  Blue  Purple  Pink
Brown  Red  Orange  Grey  Black  Dark Blue  Pale Blue or Light Blue

3 Look at the clothes above. True or false? Write T or F.
   ► a green sweater  4 grey trousers  9 a blue skirt
   ◄ red trousers  5 a black suit  10 an orange and white T-shirt
   1 a pale blue shirt  6 a brown jacket  11 a purple dress
   2 dark blue jeans  7 a pale yellow top  12 a cream jumper
   3 a light blue coat  8 a pink raincoat

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the colours.
**C Accessories**

- scarf
- tie
- hat
- belt
- handbag
- umbrella
- watch
- a pair of shoes
- sandals
- boots
- trainers
- socks
- glasses
- sunglasses

**5 One word in each group is wrong. Cross it out.**

- trousers  trainers  jeans
- 1 trainers  boots  gloves
- 2 scarf  umbrella  tie
- 3 jeans  socks  shoes
- 4 sandals  glasses  hat
- 5 glove  watch  hat
- 6 scarf  belt  jeans

**6 Make the sentences singular if possible.**

- Are these your boots? Is this your boot?  
- Her glasses are nice. Not possible.
- Do you like my new trousers? 
- She's wearing my scarves.
- Where are my gloves? 
- The jeans cost €20.
- I don't like these sunglasses.

**7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.**

1. What are you wearing today?
2. What clothes do you wear at the weekend?
3. Do you wear trainers a lot? If you don't, what do you wear?
4. Do you wear glasses or sunglasses? Why?
5. How often do you wear: a hat? a scarf? a watch?

**8 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.**

**spotlight**  **Plural nouns**

Trousers, jeans, tights, clothes and (sun)glasses are always plural. They take a plural verb form.

These trousers are very nice. Not. This trouser is very nice.

My jeans were cheap.
A Describing clothes

1. long
2. short
3. cheap
4. expensive
5. smart
6. casual
7. small/little
8. large/big
9. uncomfortable
10. comfortable
11. tight
12. loose

Look at the pictures and describe the clothes.

1. a cheap _______ tie
2. a _______ skirt
3. _______ shoes
4. a _______ handbag
5. a _______ T-shirt
6. an _______ tie
7. _______ clothes
8. a _______ skirt

Circle the correct word.

- My handbag is very large/small, so I put lots in it.
1. I like these trainers, but they’re very comfortable/uncomfortable.
2. I’ve got some really nice/horrible boots. I wear them a lot.
3. At the weekend, I usually wear casual/smart clothes.
4. I haven’t got much money, so I don’t wear cheap/expensive clothes.
5. He’s only seven years old, so just buy him a small/large T-shirt.
6. You need your long/short coat today; it’s really cold.
7. If you are going to the gym, it’s better to wear tight/loose clothes.
8. That suit is awful/lovely — you must buy it.

Write the opposite of the underlined word.

- You need a large belt. small
1. She’s wearing a long coat. short
2. Are those boots comfortable? uncomfortable
3. We can wear smart clothes.

Was the belt very cheap?

4. Was the belt very cheap?
5. She doesn’t want tight trousers.
6. Does this look nice?

Test yourself. Cover the words and say the adjectives and clothes in the pictures.
## B Talking about size 📚

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
<th>Problems with size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What size are you?</td>
<td>I'm a (size) 12.</td>
<td>It's too small.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What size do you take?</td>
<td>I take size 40.</td>
<td>They're fit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>small/medium/large</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complete the sentences.

1. What size ________ are you?
   - I'm ________ 14.

2. Is she small, ____________, or large?

3. I'm sorry, this shirt is the ____________ size.

4. Does this jumper ________?
   - No, it's ________ tight for me.

5. What size do you ________?
   - Small.

6. I like the trousers but they don't ________;
   - they're ________ long.

### Look at the pictures. What's the problem?

1. The jacket is ________ long.

2. The trousers are ________ small.

3. The hat is ________ short.

### Spotlight: too and very

- There is a difference in meaning between **too** and **very**.
- Her coat is **very** long. (It's OK.)
- Her coat is **too** long. (It's not OK.)
- These trousers are **very** tight, but I'm going to buy them.
- These boots are **too** tight; I can't wear them.
C In a shop

A shop assistant (SA) and a customer (C) are talking.

SA  Do you need any help?
C  Yes, I'm looking for a smart, black skirt.
SA  What size do you take?
C  I'm a 12.

C  Oh, this is lovely. Can I try it on?
SA  Yes, sure. The changing room is over there.
C  Oh, no. It's too tight.
SA  Here's a size 14.

SA  That looks really nice.
C  Thanks. Yes, it's fine. I think I'll take it.
SA  Where do I pay?
C  I'll take it/I'll leave it.
SA  The cash desk is at the front.
SA  How would you like to pay?
C  By credit card.
SA  That's fine. Thank you.

7 Write the words in correct sentences.

 ► help / can / I / you / ? Can I help you? ______________________________________________________________________
 1 I / where / pay / do / ? ______________________________________________________________________
 2 thanks / no / I'll / it / leave ________________________________
 3 changing / where's / excuse me / the / room / ? ________________________________
 4 dress / can / on / this / try / I / ? ________________________________
 5 pair / I'm / of / looking / trousers / for / a ________________________________
 6 help / you / need / I / do / any / ? ________________________________

8 Write the final word in each sentence.

 ► What size do you take ____________ ?
 1 Can I try these ____________ ?
 2 Pay at the cash ____________ .
 3 I like these. I'll take ____________ .
 4 I'd like to pay by credit ____________ .
 5 Excuse me. Where's the changing ____________ ?
 6 Do you need any ____________ ?
 7 Oh, that looks ____________ . You must buy it.
 8 How would you like to ____________ ?

9 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

 1 Do you like shopping for clothes? ________________________________________________
 2 How often do you buy clothes? ________________________________________________
 3 What was the last thing you bought? ________________________________________________
 4 Do you always know what you're looking for? ________________________________________________
 5 Do you always try clothes on? ________________________________________________
 6 How do you usually pay? ________________________________________________

EVERYDAY LIFE  53
20 I can talk about money

Do Unit 1 first

A Money in shops

You are in a shop and decide to buy three CDs. They cost £9 each, which is €27 altogether. You can pay in cash (notes and coins); for example, you give the shop assistant £30, and he gives you £3 change. You can also pay by credit card. The assistant puts your card in a machine and asks you to enter (or put in) your PIN. You can also pay by debit card or cheque. At the end, he gives you your CDs and a receipt.

1 Correct the mistakes.

Can I pay by cheque?
1 The dictionary cost me eight euros and fifty.
2 Could you put your PIN, please?
3 She paid for the dress of cash.
4 I've only got a 50 pounds note.
5 They're £6 for each.
6 Have you got a bank account?
7 Three books. That's €42 together.
8 The pen cost £3.20. I gave the shop assistant £5 and she gave me £1.80 money.

2 Complete the dialogues.

A I'd like this watch, please.
B Fine. How would you like to pay?
A By debit card.
B Thanks. Could you (1) your (2) please? Thank you. Here's your watch and your (3) .
A Thank you.
B Hi. How much do these peaches (4) ?
C They're 50 cents (5) .
D I'll have six, please, and a melon.
B Thank you. That's €4.30 (6) .
C I'm sorry, I've only got a €50 (7) .
D That's OK. I've got lots of (8) .
B Money in adverts

Glossary
sell / sold give something to someone who pays you money for it; buy / bought
price the money you have to pay for something. (If something is half price, you pay 50%.)
spend money on something / spent pay money for something
free If something is free, you don’t pay for it.
bill a piece of paper which shows how much you need to pay
online on the internet
save If you save 5% on a bill, you pay 95% of the bill.
fare the money you pay to go by plane, train, etc.
earn get money for the work you do
lottery a game where you buy tickets and can win money
win / won get money etc. in a game

3 Circle the correct answer.
1. I bought this table for £50 online.
   1. What’s the price of these shoes?
   2. I don’t spend a lot on food.
   3. I bought ten bottles and earned £3.
   4. I won £100 in the lottery.

4 Test yourself. Cover the glossary and write the past simple forms.
   ➨ pay paid  3 sell sold  6 save saved  
   1 buy bought  4 earn earned  
   2 spend spent  5 win won  

5 Complete the questions with a word from the box.
   (You will answer the questions in Exercise 6.)
   ➨ How much do you spend on food every week?
   1. Do you ever shop expensive?
   2. Is your phone expensive?
   3. Is water expensive in restaurants?
   4. What’s the a litre of milk?
   5. Are trains expensive?
   6. Do women more than men?

6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5 or ask another student.
## 21 I can talk about the weather

### A What's the weather like? 🌡️

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>☀️ It's sunny.</td>
<td>The sun's shining.</td>
<td>sun/sunshine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☁️ It's cloudy.</td>
<td></td>
<td>cloud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☔️ It's wet.</td>
<td>It's raining.</td>
<td>rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🌬️ It's windy.</td>
<td>The wind's blowing. or blew</td>
<td>wind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🍁 It's icy.</td>
<td></td>
<td>ice v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🪴 It's foggy.</td>
<td>It's snowing.</td>
<td>snow v</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Match 1–9 with a–j.
   - It's ______
   - It ______
   - The wind ______
   - It isn't ______
   - The sun ______
   - Is ______
   - There's a bit ______
   - There's a lot of ______
   - It doesn't ______
   - What's ______

   - a of cloud today.
   - b it foggy outside?
   - c isn't raining.
   - d cold this morning.
   - e snow on the roads.
   - f rain a lot here.
   - g the weather like?
   - h very windy.
   - i blow my hat off.
   - j is shining.

2. Rewrite the sentences using the correct word.
   - There was a lot of ice.
     - It was very ______
   - It isn't raining.
     - There's no ______
   - Is it ______?
   - We often have snow.
     - It often ______
   - She doesn't like fog.
     - She doesn't like ______
   - It was very windy on Friday.
     - There was a lot of ______ on Friday.
   - There are no clouds.
     - It isn't ______.

3. Test yourself. Cover the words in the table and look at the pictures. What's the weather like?
B Wet and dry weather

In my country, the weather in spring is very changeable. It can be pleasant and dry, but we often have showers. It can get hot in the summer for two or three months, and in the cities it is often humid, especially before a storm. It's cooler on the coast, where there is usually a sea breeze. In autumn, we get some heavy rain, perhaps with thunder and lightning. In winter, it can be dry, sunny and freezing, or grey and damp.

4 Circle the correct word.
- Humid weather is very pleasant/uncomfortable.
1. There was a bit of sunshine between the showers/lightning.
2. Do you like watching the lightning/thunder when it's stormy?
3. The air in the Sahara Desert is dry/humid, and it's very hot/cold at midday.
4. Showers usually last a few hours/minutes.
5. In cold, wet weather, your clothes feel damp/humid.
6. By the sea you get a nice breeze/wind.

5 Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets.
- It's wet outside. (rain) It's raining outside.
1. It rained a lot last night. (heavy) There was ____________
2. It was warm and damp yesterday. (humid) It ____________
3. There was a bit of rain in the afternoon. (shower) There ____________
4. The weather changes a lot. (changeable) The weather ____________
5. It isn't wet today. (dry) It ____________
6. We had heavy rain and thunder. (storm) We had ____________

6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Make the sentences true for your country.
- We often have storms in July. We never have storms in July.
1. We have a lot of showers in the spring. ____________
2. In winter it's always freezing at night. ____________
3. The weather is always the same in the summer. ____________
4. We sometimes have heavy rain for 24 hours. ____________
5. It often snows in the winter. ____________
6. Our winters are usually dry. ____________
7. We often have thunder and lightning. ____________
8. It is usually hot and dry in summer. ____________
22 I can talk about illness  Do Unit 12 first

A Common problems

What's the matter? I don't feel well. I've got...

a headache toothache stomach-ache a cold a cough a sore throat

flu a temperature a pain in my leg also my leg hurts backache I feel sick

1 Circle the correct answer.

1. I've got a temperature.
2. I feel I've got a cold.
3. He doesn't feel well.
4. I feel I've got toothache.
5. Do you feel/I'm sick?
7. He's got flu/a flu?
8. Is/Has she got a temperature?
9. I hurt/I've got a pain in my eye.
10. Is/Has she got a temperature?
11. She is/it's got a sore throat.
12. I don't feel/I haven't got a cough.

spotlight be ill/sick

Ill means ‘not well’.

Be sick usually means to bring up food from your stomach (also vomit).

If you feel sick, you think you are going to be sick.

2 Complete the sentences.

1. I had to stand up for ten hours; now I've got backache.
2. She has always smoked a lot, and now she's got a bad
   look, it's 39 degrees.
3. I walked 20 kilometres today, and my feet
   You look terrible. - I don't feel
4. What's the
   I ate too much at lunch and now I've got
5. My little boy had four ice creams and now he feels
6. I've got a temperature and a terrible headache. I think I've got
7. I can't eat anything; I've got a sore

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
B What should I do?  

I don't feel very well. I've got a temperature.  

You should **go and see** your GP.  
You should **go to** the chemist's.  
You should **stay in bed** for a day or two.  
You should go and lie down for a while.

**Glossary**

- **go and see** go to, visit  
- **GP** (General Practitioner) family doctor  
- **chemist's** shop where you get medicine (also pharmacy)  
- **lie down**

- **for a while** for a short time  
- **stay in bed** go to bed and not get up  
- **for a day or two** for a short time (not more than three days)

**spotlight** **should** + verb  

You use **should** when you tell people what you think is the best thing for them to do. **Should** is used for giving advice.  

* I feel terrible. — You should go to bed. You shouldn't go to work today.

There are more practice exercises on the CD-ROM.

---

4 Cross out one word you don't need in each sentence.

- 1. I don't feel very well.  
- 2. You should go to the chemist's.  
- 3. Go and lie down for a while.  
- 4. Stay in the bed and don't do anything.

- 5. Go to bed for a day or two.  
- 6. You should go and see your doctor.  
- 7. You shouldn't go to work today.  
- 8. Lie down for the a while.

5 Write some advice to people using **should** and the word in brackets.

- 1. I've got a cold. (chemist's) **You should go to the chemist's.**  
- 2. I've got backache. (lie)  
- 3. My ear hurts. (pharmacy)  
- 4. I've got a sore throat, a cough and a temperature. (stay)  
- 5. I feel sick. (while)  
- 6. I've got flu. (GP)
23 I can get help at the chemist’s

In a chemist’s shop, a chemist (Ch) is talking to a customer (C).

Ch Can I help you?
C Yes, I cut my finger yesterday, and it really hurts.
Ch You need some antiseptic cream* for it.
C Right. Could I have some plasters* and some cotton wool*, please?
Ch Yes, of course. That’s €5.60, please.

Ch Yes?
C Er, I need something for a cold.
Ch Right, well, try these tablets*—they’re very good.
C OK, and how often do I take them?
Ch Take two tablets every four hours with water.
C Thanks. And I’d like a box of tissues*, please, and some cough medicine*.

Glossary

need If you need something, it’s necessary or important for you to have it.
antiseptic You put antiseptic cream on a cut to clean it. Try use something (e.g. a tablet, medicine) to see if it helps take a tablet eat a tablet (also take medicine)

1 Correct the spelling. Be careful: one is correct.

Correct: Chémist, chemist
2 Correct: coton wool, cotton wool
3 Correct: antiseptic
4 Correct: plasters
5 Correct: creme

2 Complete the sentences using phrases from the box.

Customer
1 I’d like a box of tissues, please.
2 Have you got something for a sore throat?
3 I need something.
4 I need some cotton wool.
5 Could I have a box?

Chemist
1 You need some plasters.
2 Try this medicine—it’s very good.
3 Do you need antiseptic?
4 Can I help you?  
5 I need some plasters.
6 Take one please.
7 I need something.
8 Can I have a box of?

3 Test yourself. Cover the conversations. Look at the pictures and say the words.
Review: Everyday life

Unit 17

1 Put the preposition in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.

- We often go on Saturday night. (out) We often go out on Saturday night.
1 We sometimes go a walk after lunch. (for) ________________________
2 Do you usually play tennis the weekend? (at) ________________________
3 I usually go the gym, and then I go home. (to) ________________________
4 She listens music on her MP3 player when she goes shopping. (to) ________________________
5 On Sundays I often stay and watch TV. (in) ________________________
6 I talk my parents every evening. (to) ________________________
7 My sister occasionally comes and we have dinner together. (round) ________________________
8 What time do you get work in the morning? (to) ________________________

2 Complete Jana’s daily routine below using phrases a – k.

a the shopping
g to bed at midnight
b breakfast together
h home
c up at 6.30 a.m ✓
i before breakfast
d to work at about 9.30
j a shower
e a shave
k dinner together
f work at 6.00 p.m. and go home

My husband, Marco, and I have the same routine every day. I usually get and have
(1) ______. I get dressed (2) ______, and Marco always has a shower and (3) ______. We have
(4) ______, then Marco and I leave (5) ______. I go to the town centre and do (6) ______ on
my way to work. I get (7) ______. I finish (8) ______. We have (9) ______, and I go (10) ______.

Unit 18

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

tie  watch  hat  socks  T-shirt  belt  jumper  tights  sandals  gloves  boots

- You wear them on your feet in summer. sandals
1 You wear them inside your shoes. ______ 6 You wear it round your neck. ______
2 You wear it on your head. ______ 7 You wear it over a shirt. ______
3 You wear them on your hands. ______ 8 You wear them over your legs and feet. ______
4 You wear them on your feet. ______ 9 You can wear it under a shirt. ______
5 You wear it on your wrist. ______ 10 You wear it round your waist. ______
2 Label the colours.

1 __________
2 __________
3 __________
4 __________
5 __________
6 __________
7 __________
8 __________
9 __________
10 __________

3 Write a, some or a pair of.

► a __________ hat 2 __________ jeans 6 __________ jacket
► some __________ jumpers 3 __________ ties 7 __________ trainers
► a pair of __________ gloves 4 __________ trousers 8 __________ sandals
► a __________ scarf 5 __________ shirts

Unit 19

1 Complete the puzzle. Answer 1–16. Follow the arrows.

OPPOSITE OF
COMFORTABLE

1 OK, I'll ______ it.
2 Opposite of tight.
3 Opposite of expensive.
4 What ______ are you? I'm a 14.
5 Can I ______ it on?
6 The ______ room is over there.
7 I'd like to ______ in cash.
8 Synonym for awful.

9 The place where you pay in a shop is the ______

10 Small, ______ or large?
11 Can I ______ you?
12 It's the ______ size. It's too small.
13 Opposite of smart.
14 A person who works in a shop is a shop ______
15 No, thanks, I'll ______ it. It's too expensive.
16 Do you ______ any help?
2 Complete the conversation between the shop assistant (SA) and the customer (C).
SA Hello, do you need any help?
C Yes, I'm (1) looking for some brown trousers.
SA Right. What size do you (2) wear?
C Oh, size 10, I think.
SA OK, well, how about these?
C Oh, yes, they're very (3) nice. Where can I try them (4) on?
SA The changing (5) room is over there.
Later...
SA Hmm, they (6) are really nice.
C Yes, but they're (7) a little small. Can I try on a (8) bigger size 12, please?
Later...
C They're (9) too big. I'll take (10) these ones. Where do I (11) pay?
SA At the (12) cashier desk.

Unit 20

1 True or false? Write T or F.

1 You pay a receipt. F
2 You can pay for things by cheque or bill. T
3 If you pay in cash, you use notes and coins. T
4 If you buy three things for €60 altogether, they cost €180 each. F
5 If you use a credit card in a shop, they usually ask you to enter a PIN. T
6 If you win a car, you don't have to pay for it. It's free. T

2 Complete the text.

Last year, I won €10,000 on the lottery. I was so excited! The first day, I went out and spent (2) my old car and bought (3) a new one. It only cost (4) €3000 because it was half price (5), and I also spent (6) another 5% because I paid (7) (8) cash. The next day, I gave my brother some money. He doesn't earn (9) very much, so I paid (10) his electricity and phone bill (11) for him, and then I gave him the plane ticket (12) to Lisbon so that he could go and see his girlfriend. And I've still got some money in the bank.

Unit 21

1 Write a lot, a lot of, a bit, or a bit of.

1 It rained (a lot) yesterday – I couldn't go out.
2 It's (a bit) wet today.
3 There was (a lot of) fog this morning. I couldn't see where I was driving.
4 It snows (a lot) in the mountains – sometimes over twenty centimetres a day.
5 There's (a bit of) rain, but it's not much. You don't need your umbrella.
6 Snowed (a lot) last night – only two centimetres.
7 We had (a lot of) sun yesterday – from morning to evening. It was lovely.

REVIEW: EVERYDAY LIFE 63
Unit 22

Find the illness words in the square. Write them in 1 – 9.

Across
2. The wind ________ more in autumn.
5. Noun from icy.
8. Warm and damp weather feels ________.
9. You need good ________ for skiing.
11. Very cold.
12. It rained a lot—we had ________ rain.
13. Opposite of wet.

Down
1. We had ________ of rain.
3. Heavy rain with black clouds and wind.
4. Adjective from wind.
6. Rain for a short time.
7. The noise you hear in storms.
10. The sun ________ more in summer.
11. Adjective from fog.

Unit 23

Complete the conversation between the Chemist (Ch) and customer (C).

Ch. Good morning, can I help ________ you?
C. I need 1 ________ for a sore throat.
Ch. Right. 2 ________ these 3 ________ ________—they're excellent.
C. OK, how 4 ________ do I 5 ________ 6 ________ ________ now, and then every two hours.
C. OK, and 7 ________ ________ I have a 8 ________ ________ of tissues, and some cough 9 ________ ________ , please?
Ch. Yes, of course.
I can name meat and fish

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Meat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cow</td>
<td>beef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lamb/sheep</td>
<td>lamb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pig</td>
<td>pork</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>chicken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duck</td>
<td>duck</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Spotlight: Pig**

From a pig we also get:
- ham
- bacon
- sausages

**Fish**
- salmon
- tuna

**Seafood**
- squid
- prawns
- crab
- mussels

1. Which one is different? Why?
   - cow sheep salmon pig
   - lamb pork bacon
   - tuna beef squid
   - mussels chicken
   - Yes, it’s a fish.

2. Complete the names of meat, fish or seafood.
   - lambs
   - beef
   - chicken

3. Write the word for the meat or fish.
   - Salmon
   - because it’s a fish.

4. **About You** Write your answers or ask another student.
   - Do you like:
     - bacon?
     - beef?
     - squid?
     - mussels?
     - prawns?
     - duck?
     - lamb?

5. Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words.
I can name fruit and vegetables

A Fruit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>taste</td>
<td><em>This juice tastes</em> of orange and lemon.</td>
<td>= it's like orange and lemon when you drink it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweet</td>
<td>Strawberries are very sweet.</td>
<td>tasting of sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitter</td>
<td><em>Lemons are very</em> bitter.</td>
<td>very sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fresh</td>
<td>I eat a lot of fresh fruit.</td>
<td>not old and not from a tin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Find the end of each word.

banana / grapesmelonlemonavocadostrawberrycherrypineapplepearmeorangepeachapple

2. Answer the questions.

1. Are strawberries red or green? red
2. Are peaches sweet or bitter? 
3. Are cherries red or green?
4. Are avocados red or green?
5. Are grapes big or small?
6. Is fresh fruit good or bad?
7. Do mangoes taste sweet or bitter?
8. Are melons big or small?

3. Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

Use the cover card to test yourself.  Write down new words in a notebook.

FOOD AND DRINK
4 Make the names of vegetables from the letters.

- sape   3 prepe  6 routceget
- ractor  4 gacabe  7 moatot
- nonio  5 nseb   8 ragii

5 True or false? Write T or F.

- Carrots are small and round. F  4 Cauliflower is white. 
- People often eat raw potatoes. T  5 Peas are often frozen. 
- Chillies make your mouth hot. T  6 You often have tomatoes in a salad. 
- Lettuce is often frozen. T  7 Salad is often cooked. 

6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student. 
Do you eat these things in your country? Answer ‘Yes, a lot,’ ‘Yes,’ ‘Yes, but not much,’ or ‘No, we don’t.’

- raw cabbage  5 mushrooms  9 mangoes
- garlic  6 aubergine  10 fresh pineapple
- cherries  7 cucumber  11 lettuce
- frozen carrots  8 avocado  12 courgette

7 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.
26 I can buy food in a shop

A Food

milk u  bread u  butter u  a piece of cheese u  eggs  sugar u

a cake  jam u  biscuits  olive oil u  rice u  pasta u

olives  noodles  a bar of chocolate u

spotlight  Uncountable nouns
The nouns with a u are usually uncountable:
butter or some butter  no a butter/butters.
This bread is nice.  Not These breads are nice.
We can make uncountable nouns countable:
a piece of cheese  a bar of chocolate

1 Tick (√) the answers that are right, and correct the answers that are wrong.

1 some oil  ✓
2 a milk  □ milk/some milk
3 biscuits ...
4 a piece of cheese ...
5 a butter ...
6 cakes ...
7 a cheese ...
8 some sugar ...
9 milk ...
10 eggs ...
11 a bread ...
12 pasta ...
13 rice ...
14 some rice ...
15 a large bar of chocolate ...

2 Complete the words.

1 br u  a br u  4 bis ...  8 ri ...
2 mi u  5 some olive ...
3 some ch ...
4 six e ...
5 sug ...
6 but ...
7 a large bar of
8 ch ...
9 noo ...
10

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
B Containers and quantities

- a **carton** of juice
- a **packet** of rice and a packet of biscuits
- a **jar** of jam and a jar of olives
- a **tin** of tomatoes
- a **can** of soda
- a **bottle** of wine
- a **box** of chocolates and a box of matches

100 grams
200 grams
half a kilo
a kilo
half a litre
a litre

**Spotlight:** **tin and can**

We usually say **tin** when there is food inside, and we say **can** when there is something to drink inside.

- A **tin** of tuna.
- A **can** of beer.

4 Study the pictures for 30 seconds. Cover the pictures. True or false? Write T or F.

- There’s a jar of jam. __________
- There’s a box of chocolates. __________
- There’s a bottle of water. __________
- There’s a packet of sugar. __________
- There’s a can of cola. __________
- There’s a jar of coffee. __________
- There’s a box of matches. __________
- There’s a carton of milk. __________
- There’s a jar of olives. __________
- There’s a tin of peas. __________

5 Complete the phrases with a suitable word.

- Can you buy a ________ of rice at the shops, please?
  1. I bought my sister a lovely ________ of chocolates.
  2. Can I have a ________ of strawberry jam, please?
  3. We need a ________ of olive oil.
  4. There’s a ________ of orange juice in the fridge.
  5. For four people, we’ll need a ________ of chicken.
  6. Can I open this ________ of chocolate biscuits?
  7. I’d like 200 ________ of ham, please.
  8. I think there’s a ________ of noodles in the cupboard.
  9. He drinks half a ________ of milk for breakfast.
  10. I went out and bought a ________ of wine.

6 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

**Food and Drink** 69
C Buying food

Shop assistant (SA)  Customer (C)

C Could I have a kilo of onions, please?
SA Right.
C And have you got any peaches?
SA Yes. How many would you like?
C I'd like (our, please). Are they ripe?
SA Yes, they're lovely. Anything else?
C No, that's all, thanks.

C I'd like some cheese, please.
SA Sure. What would you like?
C Oh, that Brie looks nice.
SA Yes, it is. How much would you like?
C About 200 grams.
SA Right. This piece is just over.
C That's fine.
SA OK. Anything else?
C No, that's it, thanks.

7 Complete the dialogues.

[A] Yes?
B I'd like ___________ six pears, please.

1 A Have you ______________ any apples?
B Yes. How ______________ would you like?

2 A I'd like some ham, please.
B How ________________?
A Oh, about 200 grams.
B Of course. Anything ________________?
A No, ______________ it, thanks.

3 A ______________ I have half a kilo of onions?
B Sure. That's ______________ under half.
A Yeah, that's fine.

4 A I'd like ______________ a melon, but
these don't look ________________.
B No, they need two or three more days.
A OK.

8 Make sentences from the words.

[A] It / that's / thanks That's it, thanks.

1 twelve / have / could / please / eggs / i / ?
2 please / some / like / I'd / sugar
3 got / ham / you / any / have / i / ?
4 much / would / cheese / how / like / you / i / ?
5 that's / kilo / just / half / a / over
6 oranges / many / like / would / how / you / i / ?

Glossary

Could I have ...? This is another polite way
to say 'I want'.
Have you got any ...? = Do you have any...?
ripe If something is ripe, you can eat it now.
that's it or that's all = I don't want any
more things.
I'd like = I would like (This is a polite way to
say 'I want'.)
just over a little more than or just under
Any other? = Do you want any more
things?

Spotlight how much and how many

We use how much with uncountable
nouns and how many with countable
nouns:
How much butter do you want?
How many apples do we need?

FOOD AND DRINK
27 I can order in a café

1 (white) coffee
2 black coffee
3 cappuccino
4 espresso
5 tea (with milk)
6 hot chocolate
7 orange juice
8 baguette
9 sandwich (white bread)
10 sandwich (brown bread)
11 toasted sandwich
12 roll

A waiter (W) is talking to a customer (C) in a café.
W Yes, please?
C I'd like a ham sandwich on brown bread, please, and two chicken baguettes.
W Is that to eat here or take away?
C To eat here.
W OK. Anything else?
C Yes, two coffees, please, and a cappuccino.
W OK. The food will be a couple of minutes. Have a seat.

Find the end of each word.
1 You can have a baguette sandwich toasted sandwich.
2 You can have a cappuccino tea orange juice espresso black coffee.

Complete the phrases.
1 a ham sandwich
2 brown
3 a toasted
4 black
5 eat here or
6 a
7 hot
8 black or
9 a seat, please.
10 coffee
11
12

Add one word to each line of the conversation.
W Please?
C I like two coffees please.
W To drink here or away?
C To drink here. And a toasted ham.
W OK. It will be a couple minutes.
Have seat, please.

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

Glossary
I'd like = I would like. (a polite way to say 'I want')
take away = eat in another place (not in the café)
two coffees = two cups of coffee (also two teas, etc.)
a couple of minutes = two or three minutes
have a seat = sit down

spotlight Yes, please? and Yes, please.
Yes, please? = 'What would you like?'
Yes, please? = a polite way to say 'yes'.

FOOD AND DRINK 71
A  The table

1. glass of red wine  4. oil  7. napkin  11. knife
2. salt and (black)  5. vinegar  8. bowl  12. spoon
pepper
3. bottle of mineral  6. glass of white  9. plate
water

1. Look at the picture and complete the text.
On the table, each person has a "..." (1) f __ k, and (2) s __ n, and a (3) n __ n for their hands and face. They each have a white (4) p __ e and a (5) b __ l. To drink, there's a (6) b __ e of (7) m __ l, and two (8) g __ s of (9) w __ e: one (10) r __ d and the other (11) w __ e. There is also some (12) s __ f and (13) b __ k p __ r, and little (14) b __ s of (15) o __ l and (16) v __ r.

2. ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY  Think about 1 – 12 in the picture and complete the sentences.
On restaurant tables in my country we usually or sometimes have ____________________________ ____________

We don't usually have ____________________________ ____________

3. Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.

B  What shall we have?

boiled rice  fried eggs  grilled fish  roast chicken

Steak can be: rare  medium  well done
**MENU**

**Starters**
- Tomato soup
- Grilled prawns in soy sauce
- Mussels in white wine and garlic

**Main courses**
- Pan fried tuna with green beans
- Fillet steak with chips and mushrooms
- Roast duck with cabbage and peas
- Grilled chicken with boiled potatoes
- Cheese tart with mixed salad

**Desserts**
- Apple tart
- Ice cream with chocolate sauce

---

4. True or false? Write T or F.
   - You eat the starter after the main course. ___
   - You eat ice cream with a knife and fork. ___
   - You eat the main course before dessert. ___
   - Mixed salad can have lettuce and tomato in. ___
   - You eat soup and chips in the same bowl. ___
   - The list of food to eat is called a menu. ___
   - Dessert is the first thing you eat. ___
   - You can roast a chicken or a duck. ___
   - You can boil rice or potatoes. ___
   - Fillet steak comes from a pig. ___
   - You can have cheese tart or apple tart. ___

5. Complete the sentences.
   - I’d like roast chicken. ___
   - I love ice cream. ___
   - Could I have fillet steak? ___
   - I’d like a mixed salad. ___
   - What’s your main course? ___
   - Pass me the soy sauce. ___
   - Do you like your steak well done? ___
   - I had chicken with black rice. ___

6. **ABOUT YOU** Look at the menu. Write your answers or ask another student.
   - Which starter would you like? ___
   - Which main course would you like? ___
   - Which dessert would you like? ___

7. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
C Customer and waiter

A waiter (W) is talking to a customer (C).

W Are you ready to order?
C Yes, I'll have the fillet steak.
W And how would you like your steak?
C Rare, please. And I'd like a glass of red wine, and some mineral water.
W Still or sparkling?
C Sparkling.
W Fine.

Later in the meal...
C Could I have another glass of wine?
W Yes, of course.
C Oh, and some more water, please.
W Certainly.

W Would you like to see the dessert menu?
C No thanks, but I'll have a coffee. And could I have the bill, please?
W Yes, sure.

8 Circle the correct word.

- I'd like a coffee.
1 Could I have some more/another potatoes?
2 Are you ready order/to order?
3 Do you want another/some more bottle?
4 We had a delicious meal/food last night.
5 Yes, course/of course.
6 Could I have the bill, please?
7 I'll have the prawns, please.
8 Yes, certainly/certain.

9 Complete the conversations.

Conversation 1
W Are you ready to order?
C Yes, I'll have the steak.
W And would you like it?
C Rare, please. And a bottle of mineral water.
W Yes, of course. Still or ?
C Still, please.

Conversation 2
C Could I have more water, please?
W Certainly. And would you like a bottle?
C Yes, I have the ice cream. Then could I have the ?
W Yes, .

Glossary
Are you ready to order? = Do you know what you want to eat?
I'll have steak = I'd like steak, as I want steak.
How would you like your steak? = Would you like your steak rare, medium or well done?
still water = water without gas
sparkling water = water with gas
meal = Breakfast, lunch and dinner are meals.
course = These phrases all mean 'Yes, no problem.
the bill = a piece of paper which shows the money you must pay for the meal

spotlight another or some more
Say another (= one more) with countable nouns, e.g. another glass/biscuit/apple.
Say some more with uncountable nouns, e.g. some more water/wine/bread.
**Review: Food and drink**

**Unit 24**

Put the words in the correct column. Some words go in two columns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Meat</th>
<th>Fish</th>
<th>Seafood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>chicken</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Unit 25**

1. Write three examples of a fruit or vegetable for each colour.

- **Red**
  - red pepper
  - 
  - 

- **Yellow**
  - 
  - 
  - 

- **Orange**
  - 
  - 
  - 

- **White/Cream**
  - 
  - 
  - 

- **Green**
  - 
  - 
  - 

2. Find four more adjectives, five fruits, and five vegetables in the word square.

```
TAELFRESH
MUSHROOMC
ABIPOTATO
NERIPEMBO
GRAPESEEK
OGWUNALAE
TIRLEMOND
ONOIANSE
PEARSWEET
```
Unit 26

1 Put these foods and drinks into the correct column below. Some words can go into more than one column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Packet</th>
<th>Carton</th>
<th>Box</th>
<th>Bottle</th>
<th>Jar</th>
<th>Tin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sugar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete six more phrases or sentences you say or hear in a shop. Use words from the circle. You can use the same word more than once.

- Yes, we have.____________________
- Could___________________________
- I'd______________________________
- Have____________________________
- Anything________________________
- That's___________________________
- How_____________________________

Unit 27

Write the words in the correct order in the dialogue between a waiter (W) and a customer (C).

- W please / yes / ? _____________
- C sandwich / ham / please / toasted / like / a / I'd _____________________________
- W that / eat / is / here / to / away / take / or / ? ___________________________
- C away / please / and / baguette / a / cheese / take ______________________________
- W else / fine / anything / ? _____________________________
- C coffee / black / yes / two / a / with / lemon / and / teas ________________________
- W be / OK / will / a / minutes / of / it / couple __________________________________
- W seat / a / have ____________________________________________________________
Unit 28

1 Complete the sentences.

- Three meals in the day: breakfast, lunch and __________.
- Three things you eat with: knife, __________, and __________.
- Three parts in a meal: starter, __________, and __________.
- Three ways to cook food: grilled, __________, and __________.
- Three ways to cook steak: rare, __________, and __________.
- Two things you find on a restaurant table: salt and __________.
- Two things you put on salad: oil and __________.
- Two things people drink: red wine and __________ wine.
- Two types of mineral water: still and __________.

2 A waiter (W) and a customer (C) are having a conversation. A word is missing in each line. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.

- C Could I see the __________, please? ________
- W Are you ready to? __________
- C Yes, I have the tomato soup. __________
- W Right. And for your course? __________
- C Fillet with chips. __________
- W Do you want red wine or wine? __________
- C Red, please. __________
- W OK. Is that a or just a glass? __________

Look at the vocabulary building tables on pages 199 to 201. Test yourself using the cover cards.
29 I can get around on buses

Bus routes 24 and 16

Timetable Monday to Saturday
Bus 24 every 10 minutes
Bus 16 every 12 minutes
2 minutes from stop to stop

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Excuse me, which bus do I get to the park?</td>
<td>The 16.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does the 24 go to the railway station?</td>
<td>No, it doesn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does the 24 stop near the bank?</td>
<td>Yes, it does.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does the 16 stop outside the park?</td>
<td>Yes, it does.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How often does the 16 run?</td>
<td>Every 12 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many stops is it to the park?</td>
<td>Three.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which is the last stop for the 24?</td>
<td>The bus station.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where do I get off for the cinema?</td>
<td>At the next stop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How long does it take to the bus station?</td>
<td>It takes about ten minutes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glossary

**excuse me** We say excuse me when we start talking to someone we don't know.

**get a bus, train, etc.** travel on a bus, train, etc. (also take)

**go travel**

**near** travel on a route (bus, train)

**outside**

**every** (12 minutes) e.g. at 1.00, 1.12, 1.24, etc.

**bus stop** the place where you get on or off a bus

**last stop** the bus stop at the end of the route

**get off** leave the bus or get on

**next stop** the first stop after now

**spotlight**

**How long?** = How much time?

**How long does it take?** (to get to the station)?

- It takes about 10 minutes.
- It doesn't take long. = It takes a short time.
1 Write the words in the correct order to make questions.

- near / bank / stop / does / the 24 / the / ?  Does the 24 stop near the bank?
- stops / many / to / how / it / railway station / is / the / ?
- school / me / bus / which / excuse / get / I / to / do / the / ?
- take / long / how / does / to / railway station / it / the / ?
- post office / the 24 / does / outside / stop / the / ?
- off / do / get / I / where / cinema / for / the / ?
- park / the 24 / does / to / go / the / ?
- often / run / does / the 24 / how / ?
- which / stop / last / is / for / the 16 / the / ?

2 Answer the questions in Exercise 1, using the bus information on page 78. Remember, you are at the museum.

- Yes, it does.
- 5 stop.
- 6 minutes.
- 7 minutes.
- 8 stop.

3 Complete the text, using the bus map information on page 78.

There are two bus: the 24 and the 16. For the 24, the first (1) is the museum, and the (2) stop is the cinema; the (3) stop is the bus station, where everybody has to (4) the bus. The 16 starts at the museum too, but it (5) to the railway station. The (6) tells you how often the buses (7). The 24 bus (8) (9) ten minutes. It (10) two minutes to get from the school to the park.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1 Is there a bus stop near your house? If yes, where is it exactly?
2 Which buses stop there?
3 How often do they run?
4 Do you often get the bus? If yes, where to?
5 How many stops is it?
6 How long does it take?

5 Test yourself. Cover the answers on page 78 and look at the questions and the bus route. Can you answer the questions?

Practice the questions using the CD-ROM.
30 I can get around on trains  Do Unit 29 first

A Train vocabulary

get/take a train  travel by train
the 12 o'clock train  the train that leaves at 12:00
journey  when you travel from A to B
fare  money you pay to travel
a fast train  a slow train
(railway) station  a place where trains stop and
people get on and off

Glossary

spotlight  last

1 Answer the questions.

What's another verb for get a train? take a train.
What's the opposite of a fast train? slow train.
What's the opposite of get on the train? get off the train.
What's the opposite of miss a train? catch a train.
What's another way of saying the train that leaves at 12:00?
1 5:45 train.
What do you sit on in a train?
Where do you catch a train?

2 Complete the sentences.

We can get the 1:45 train.
How much was the train?
Our seats are in the second compartment.
Sorry I'm late. I arrived at the station.
We can check the train to Zug.
5 The train is at 12:00 p.m.
6 We take a seat for the train in the café.
7 Have a look at the timetable.
I think there's a train to London at 6:15.
It's a long journey from Lisbon to Paris.
B Buying a ticket

It's now 9.30. A passenger (P) is talking to someone at the ticket office (O) at Bristol Station.

P A single to Cardiff, please.
O That's £10, please.
P Right, and when's the next train?
O There's one at 10.07.
P Fine. Do I have to change?
O No, it's direct.
P That's good. And when does it get to Cardiff?
O 10.56.
P OK. And which platform is it?
O Platform 6.
P Right, thanks.

3 Complete the questions using words from the box.

direct office train is it return advance seat

1 Which platform is it?
2 Can I book in advance?
3 Do you want a single or a return?
4 When do we get to?
5 Where's the ticket office?
6 When's the next train?
7 Can I reserve a seat?

4 Look at the timetable and complete the text.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Cheltenham</th>
<th>Kemble</th>
<th>London Paddington</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>8:35</td>
<td>9:18</td>
<td>10:40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I'm going from Cheltenham to London tomorrow. There isn't a direct train, so I have to (1) _______ at Kemble. The train (2) _______ Cheltenham at 8.35 from (3) _______. It (4) _______ Kemble at 9.08. Then I have to catch the 9:18, which gets (5) _______ London Paddington at 10.40. A (6) _______ ticket costs £22, but I can get a return for £40 if I book in (7) _______.

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1 When was your last train journey?
2 Where did you go, and why?
3 What was the fare?
4 Did you book in advance?
5 Was it direct, or did you have to change trains?
31 I can ask for and give directions

Excuse me. How do I get to the river from here?

Excuse me. Do you know the way to the railway station?

Excuse me. Is there a hotel near here?

**spotlight**  *Excuse me...*

It is polite to say *excuse me* to someone you don't know when you ask them a question.

---

**Go straight on.** or **just keep going.**
It's about ten minutes.

**Go along here and turn left.**
The bookshop is **opposite** the Hotel Plaza.

**Turn right** at the café, then **left into** Abbey Road, and the bank is **on your right.**

---

**Go along here and take the second turning on the left.**

**It's the third turning on the right.**
There's a cinema **on the corner.**

**Thanks very much.**
1 Make sentences from the words.

Go along here and turn right.
1 excuse / I / get / do / bank / the / me / how / to / ?
2 here / left / along / and / turn / go
3 bank / me / near / there / is / a / excuse / here / ?
4 the / turning / it's / right / on / the / third
5 way / the / excuse / to / know / me / do / bank / the / you / ?
6 left / Road / into / Foster / turn

2 Complete the phrases.

Turn left or right.
1 Take the second
2 Thanks very
3 On the
4 Excuse
5 Keep
6 Go straight
7 Go along
8 Do you know the

3 Complete the dialogues. Use the maps to help you.

1 A Excuse me. How do I to the cinema from here?
   B OK. Go on, and it's the second... no, the third on the (4) .
   A Thanks very .
   B You're welcome.

2 A (1) me. Is there a post office here?
   B Yes. Go (3) here and (4) the second on the (6) . The post office is (7) the bank.
   A (8) very much.
   B That's OK. No problem.

3 A Excuse me. Do you know the to the Bonham Hotel?
   B No, I'm sorry, I don't.
   A OK. Thanks... Excuse me. Do you know the Bonham Hotel?
   C Yes. (2) left (3) Frith Street and the hotel is on the next (4) on your (5) .
   A Thanks very much.
   B Not at all.

4 Test yourself. Cover the words on page 82, and look at the maps. Can you remember the directions?
32 I can talk about roads and traffic

A in town 🌟

1 Circle the correct answer.

1 traffic park
2 petrol station/jam
3 main sign/road
4 speed light/camera
5 road camera/signal
6 pedestrian crossing/park
7 traffic jam/crossing
8 main road
9 petrol station
10 traffic light(s)
11 pedestrian crossing
12 pavement

2 Complete the sentences.

1 You can go — the traffic light is green.
2 Where’s the nearest petrol _______ ________ ?
3 We live on a noisy _______ _______ road.
4 Can you read that road _______ _______ ?
5 The car _______ _______ was full, so we parked on the street.
6 Drivers have to stop at a pedestrian _______ _______ _______.
7 Be careful! There are _______ _______ cameras on the main road.
8 At the _______ _______ _______ , do we go left, right or straight on?
9 The _______ _______ _______ is always bad between 8 a.m. and 10 a.m.
10 Walk on the _______ _______ _______ , not in the road!
11 Drive slowly and turn left at the next _______ _______ _______ .

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.
B  Out of town

Beth (B) and Marco (M) are talking.

M  How far is it from London to Bath?
B  It's about 115 miles. That's 185 kilometres.
M  And what's the best way to get there?
B  Right. Take the M4 motorway from London. At Junction 18, take the A46. It's ten miles from there.
M  Thanks. And what's the speed limit on motorways here?
B  70 miles an hour. That's about 110 kilometres an hour.
M  OK. And are they very busy?
B  Yes, and you get traffic jams in the rush hour - especially when there's an accident.
M  But you still use the motorway?
B  Yes, because there are three lanes on most motorways in Britain, so it's easy to overtake. Oh, and Marco - remember to drive on the left!

Glossary

How far is it?  How many kilometres or miles is it?
take the M4  go on to and travel on the M4
motorway  a large, fast road between towns
speed limit  the fastest speed you are permitted to go
busy  A busy road has a lot of cars on it, or quiet
rush hour  the time when a lot of people are travelling to and from work
accident

lane

overtake  pass another car by going faster
drive  go somewhere in your car

4  Cover the glossary. Write the words for the meanings.

1  A large, fast road between two towns. lane
2  The busy time when people go to work. 
3  Pass another car by driving faster. 
4  The fastest speed you are permitted to go. 
5  When something bad happens, e.g. cars crash. 
6  The opposite of a busy road. 

5  Complete the sentences.

1  You can take a country road, but the motorway is quicker.
2  It's a very road in the rush hour.
3  How is it from Paris to Marseille? - It's 740 kms.
4  The best way to get to the airport is to the M25. Oh, remember to on the left!

6  ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1  How many lanes do motorways have?
2  What's the speed limit on motorways?
3  Do you have speed cameras on roads?
4  Do you drive on the left in your country?
5  When’s the rush hour?
### I can understand signs and notices 🌟

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sign or notice</th>
<th>Where?</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ladies gents toilet</td>
<td>In a bar, restaurant, train, plane, etc.</td>
<td>![Toilet]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entrance or way in</td>
<td>In a car park, museum, cinema, etc.</td>
<td>![Entrance]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit or way out</td>
<td>Go in here.</td>
<td>![Exit]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no entry</td>
<td>You can't go in here.</td>
<td>![No Entry]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no exit</td>
<td>You can't go out here.</td>
<td>![No Exit]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no smoking</td>
<td>In a cinema, restaurant, etc.</td>
<td>![No Smoking]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no parking</td>
<td>In the street, or in front of a garage or entrance</td>
<td>![No Parking]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>please do not disturb</td>
<td>hotel room door</td>
<td>![Please Do Not Disturb]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queue here</td>
<td>at a cash desk in a shop, or in a bank or post office</td>
<td>![Queue Here]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing to declare</td>
<td>at an airport</td>
<td>![Nothing To Declare]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sale</td>
<td>in a shop window</td>
<td>![Sale]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of order</td>
<td>on a public telephone, drinks machine, etc.</td>
<td>![Out Of Order]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>please ring for attention</td>
<td>at reception in a hotel, office, etc.</td>
<td>![Please Ring For Attention]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no vacancies</td>
<td>in the window of a small hotel</td>
<td>![No Vacancies]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Match 1 – 9 with a – j.
   1. No smoking _____ a in a hotel reception
   2. No parking _____ b on a hotel room door
   3. Toilet _____ c on a drinks machine
   4. Queue here _____ d in a café
   5. Out of order _____ e in a shop window
   6. Sale _____ f in front of a garage
   7. Entrance _____ g in a hotel window
   8. No vacancies _____ h at the back of a restaurant
   9. Please ring for attention _____ i at the front door of a museum
   10. Please ring for attention _____ j inside a post office

2. Complete the signs in different ways.
   a) No _____ smoking  
   1. No _____ parking  
   2. No _____ toilet  
   3. Please _____  
   4. No _____  
   5. Way _____  
   6. Please _____  
   7. Nothing to _____

3. Test yourself. Cover the signs and look at the meanings. Say the signs.
Review: Getting around

Unit 29

Correct the mistakes.

1. Where do I get out the bus for the park? Where do I get off the bus for the park?
2. How many stopping is it to the railway station?
3. Excuse, does this bus go to Alfred Road?
4. How long does it make to get to the centre?
5. Does the 31 stop next the post office?
6. Does the 9 stop outside from the school?
7. Which bus do I get to Queen Street?
8. Do the buses run all ten minutes?
9. How long time does it take to the centre?
10. What often do the buses run?

Unit 30

1. Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares make a different word. What is it?

1 2
3 4
5
6
7
8 9

1. The part of the station where you get on or get off a train.
2. The opposite of slow.
3. If you get to the station late, you could _____________ your train.
4. Book (a seat).
5. This tells you when the trains arrive and leave.
6. When you travel from one place to another.
7. Part of the train where people sit.
8. A single or return _____________.
9. Money you pay to travel.

The letters in the grey squares make the word _____________.
2 Complete the dialogue between the passenger (P) and the assistant (A) about the train journey from Bristol to Manchester. It's 9.30. The passenger is in Bristol.

P ▶ Single ............... to Manchester, please.
A That's £40, please.
P When's the (1) ............... ............................ ?
A 9.58.
P Is it (2) ............... ............................ ?
A No, you have to (3) ............... ............................ at Birmingham.
P OK. And when does the Manchester train (4) ............... ............................ ?
A At 11.48.
P And when does it (5) ............... ............................ Manchester?
A 1.23 p.m.
P Right, and which (6) ............... ............................ is that?
A Four.

Unit 31

1 A word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.
▶ Take the second turning/the left. On ............... ............................
1 The bank is on right. ............... ............................
2 How do I get the river? ............... ............................
3 Go along and turn left. ............... ............................
4 Go straight and turn right. ............... ............................
5 Excuse. Do you know the way to the bank? ............... ............................
6 Yes, it's the corner of this street. ............... ............................

2 Cross out one word in each sentence to make the sentences correct.
▶ Turn right into the Duke Street.
1 The bank is opposite of the hotel.
2 Go straight on and keep to going.
3 Is there a post office near from here?
4 It's on the your left.
5 Turn to left and go straight on.
6 It's the third turning on the right side.
Unit 32

1 Tick (✓) true or false.

- You put money in a traffic light.  TRUE  FALSE
- A motorway is bigger than a main road.  TRUE  FALSE
- You walk on a pedestrian crossing.  TRUE  FALSE
- You drive your car on the pavement.  TRUE  FALSE
- Road signs tell you what to do.  TRUE  FALSE
- Roads are quiet in the rush hour.  TRUE  FALSE
- You can get a train at a petrol station.  TRUE  FALSE
- If there's a traffic jam, the roads are busy.  TRUE  FALSE
- Motorways have more than one lane.  TRUE  FALSE
- It's a good idea to overtake at a junction.  TRUE  FALSE
- Cars drive round a circle at a roundabout.  TRUE  FALSE

2 Complete the radio traffic information.

We are getting reports of an accident on the M40 near Oxford. We understand a blue Mercedes travelling over the

(1) near Oxford. We understand a blue Mercedes travelling over the

(2) lost control when it was trying to o. (3) a bus, and hit
two other cars. The police are now at the scene of the accident (4), and say the fast

(5) of the motorway will be closed for at least an hour. This will mean long
t (6) during the [hour] to (7),

and the police are telling drivers to keep away from the motorway if possible and to
t (8) a different route into Oxford.

Unit 33

Complete the dialogues.

- Do we pay for things here? - I think so. It says (queue here).
- Can I leave my car here? - No, the sign says .
- Can we go in here? - Yes, that sign says .
- Let's stay in this hotel. - We can't. Look, it says .
- Can we clean this bedroom now? - No, it's says .
- Is everything cheaper here this week? - Yes, look, it says in the window.
- Can I use that telephone? - No, it says it's .
- Can we go out here? - No, that sign says .
- Can I have a cigarette? - No. It says .

REVIEW: GETTING AROUND 89
Study the map of Brazil for one minute, then complete the sentences.

1. The town in the north is __________.
2. The town in the south is __________.
3. The capital is __________.
4. The longest river is __________.
5. The highest mountain is __________.
6. In the north, it has a border with __________.
7. A popular city with tourists is __________.
8. It's famous for Sugar Loaf __________.
9. Brasilia isn't near the sea; it's __________.
10. Rio is on the __________.

Test yourself. Don't look at Exercise 1. What can you say about these places?

- Recife: It's a town in the north of Brazil.

1. The Amazon
2. Pico da Nebelina
3. Brasilia
4. Porto Alegre
5. Argentina
6. Rio de Janeiro

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1. What's the capital, and where is it?
2. What are some of the other major cities?
3. Does it have borders with any other countries? If so, what are they?
4. Which places are popular in summer?
5. What are the famous places in your capital city?
35 I can talk about my town  Do Unit 34 first

A Buildings and places in a town

- castle
- palace
- statue
- square
- cathedral (for Christians)
- church (for Christians)
- temple (e.g. for Hindus and Buddhists)
- mosque (for Muslims)
- market
- bridge
- park
- museum

building e.g. shop, church, castle see square, park, etc.

1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>museum</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>square</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>castle</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>cathedral</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>parque</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>musque</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>biding</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>museum</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>square</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>castle</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>cathedral</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>parque</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>musque</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>biding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the sentences.

1 My sister got married in our little church.
2 I think Buddhists use that.
3 The is the best place to see the river.
4 The is the cheapest place to buy food.
5 You can learn about the history of the town in the local.
6 There is a of Nelson Mandela in the main.
7 The and are both open to visitors from 10 until 5.
8 The square is a nice to sit and watch people.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.
**Facts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>size</th>
<th>It's a big/large medium-sized small</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
<td>in the north-east of Poland 50km west of Moscow on the coast on a river</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>population</td>
<td>It's over 30,000 just under 1,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interesting facts</td>
<td>It's famous for its cathedral modern industrial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It has lots of historic buildings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Glossary**

- **fact** a piece of true information
- **city** a very large town, e.g., 2 million people
- **town** smaller than a city, e.g., 30,000 people
- **village** smaller than a town, e.g., 1,000 people, and in the countryside.
- **location** the place where something is, e.g., 50 kms from Rome
- **population** the number of people who live in a place
- **more than 1 mile** over 1 mile
- **just under** a little under (also just over)
- **modern** of the present or old
- **industrial** having a lot of industry, e.g., making cars or steel
- **historic** important in history

4 Write the phrases in the correct columns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Population</th>
<th>Interesting facts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in the north-east</td>
<td>on the coast</td>
<td>famous for historic buildings</td>
<td>over two million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an industrial town</td>
<td>just under 50,000</td>
<td>on the River Duero</td>
<td>a small village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>south-west of the capital</td>
<td>about 3,000</td>
<td>a large city</td>
<td>a medium-sized town</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Complete the text about Turin.

Turin is a large city, 140 km south-west (1) ... Milan, (2) ... the north-west (3) ... Italy. It is (4) ... the River Po and three other rivers. The (5) ... is just (6) ... one million (in fact, it is 908, 000). It is an (7) ... city; the car makers, Fiat, are based here, for example, but it also has many (8) ... buildings, including palaces and castles.

6 **ABOUT YOUR TOWN** Write a similar text about your city/town/village.
### Opinions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>opinion</td>
<td>What's your <strong>opinion</strong> of the new cathedral? – I think it's wonderful.</td>
<td><strong>Your opinion</strong> is what you think about something; it is not a fact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>It's <strong>busy</strong> in the summer when the tourists arrive.</td>
<td>If a place is <strong>busy</strong>, it is full of people, cars, and activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crowded</td>
<td>The bars get very <strong>crowded</strong> in the evenings.</td>
<td>Full of people or too full of people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polluted</td>
<td>It's very <strong>polluted</strong> because of all the industry. The buildings are very <strong>dirty</strong>.</td>
<td>A <strong>polluted</strong> place has <strong>dirty</strong> air, water, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirty</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Dirty</strong> means not clean.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cosmopolitan</td>
<td>London and New York are very <strong>cosmopolitan cities</strong>.</td>
<td>Having people from many different countries living there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there's lots to do</td>
<td>There's lots to do in the evening – discos, cinemas, and so on.</td>
<td>There are many activities and places to visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nightlife</td>
<td>The <strong>nightlife</strong> in my town is very good.</td>
<td>Places to go in the evening; bars, clubs, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safe</td>
<td>It's <strong>safe</strong> during the day but can be dangerous at night.</td>
<td>Free from danger. If a town is <strong>safe</strong>, you don't need lots of police.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Dangerous</strong> means that something can harm you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Do the speakers like the places they're talking about? Tick (√) yes or no.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>YES</th>
<th>NO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'The streets are very dirty.'</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 'I think it's very polluted, don't you?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 'There's lots to do during the day.'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 'I think the nightlife is great.'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 'There's nothing to do at night.'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 'It's so clean on the coast.'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 'I always feel safe at night.'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 'It's a really dangerous city.'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. Complete the dialogue.

A What's your **opinion** of Walton?
B Well, there are people from all over the world, so it's very (1) ___________________ – I love that.
A Yes, but is it safe?
B Well, every city is a bit (2) ___________________ at night, but there's a lot to (3) ________________ here, and the (4) ___________________ is very good – lots of bars and clubs.
A And is it very busy in the centre?
B It's OK on weekdays, but it gets very (5) ___________________ at the weekends, with all the tourists.
The centre is also quite dirty; the river is (6) ___________________ because of the industry.

9. **ABOUT YOUR TOWN** Write your opinions, or ask another student.

1. Is your city/town/village a safe place to live, or is it dangerous? ________________________________
2. What is there to do during the day? ___________________________________________________________
3. Is it usually busy or quiet? __________________________________________________________________
4. What about the nightlife? ___________________________________________________________________
5. Is it a very cosmopolitan place? __________________________________________________________________
6. Is it a nice place to live? ___________________________________________________________________
36 I can describe the countryside

A On the farm

1 sky
2 wood
3 hill
4 farmer
5 valley
6 tree
7 field
8 farm (the house and fields)
9 lake
10 horse
11 boat
12 grass
13 dog
14 path

Glossary

own If you own something, it is yours.
grow Farmers grow potatoes, rice, etc. to sell.
a few some; not a lot
crop a plant a farmer grows and sells, e.g. rice, apples

Jack Robson is a farmer. He owns Eatwell Farm. He grows fruit and a few other crops.

1 Look at the picture and the text. True or false? Write T or F.
   1 There's a lake near the trees. T
   2 There is nothing in the field. ______
   3 The farmer's in the boat. ______
   4 The path goes to the lake. ______
   5 The dog lives on the farm. ______
   6 The horse is eating the grass. ______
   7 The sky's grey. ______
   8 There are a lot of chickens. ______
   9 The farmer grows fruit. ______

2 Complete the words. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 3.)

   ABOUT YOU
   Yes, I do. It's 200 metres from my home.
   Do you live near a \_ \_ \_ \_ d?
   1 Do you live in a \_ \_ y or on a \_ \_ l?
   2 Can you see any \_ \_ \_ where you are now?
   3 Can you see a \_ w \_ \_ \_ s where you are now?
   4 Are there any \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ s near your home?
   5 Do you \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ or a \_ \_ r?
   6 What \_ \_ \_ d people \_ w where you live?
   7 Do you know any \_ \_ \_ \_ e \_ \_?

   ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Can you remember the words?
B In the countryside

I live **alone** in a beautiful **area** in the **countryside**. In the mornings, it is so quiet. I sit and listen to the **birds** — it's **wonderful**. I've got a garden with lots of **flowers** and I grow all my fruit and vegetables, so I only eat **fresh food**, which is very **healthy**. The big problem is that **public transport** is **terrible**. But I've got a **bike** if I need to go to town. And it's a bit **lonely** too, but I can always talk to Jack at Eatwell Farm, and sometimes I **look after** his chickens for him.

**Glossary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>area</th>
<th>a part of a town, country or the world</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the countryside</td>
<td>a place with fields, woods, farms, etc. that is outside towns or cities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bird</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wonderful</td>
<td>very good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flower</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fresh food</td>
<td>food taken from the tree or plant; not old or from a tin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>healthy</td>
<td>If something is healthy, it helps to keep you well. If a person is healthy, they are well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public transport</td>
<td>system of buses and trains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bike (also bicycle)</td>
<td>you ride a bike or go somewhere by bike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look after</td>
<td>If you look after an animal, you give it food and see that it is healthy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Is the meaning of the underlined words/phrases the same or different? Write S or D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>We always use public transport/the buses and trains here.</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. These carrots are <strong>fresh</strong>/clean.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. She's looking at/looking after the dog.</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I think city life is <strong>wonderful</strong>/terrible.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Have you got a <strong>bike</strong>/bicycle?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Are you <strong>alone</strong>/lonely at the moment?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. She's <strong>healthy</strong>/very well.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. He lives in the <strong>countryside</strong>/on a farm.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. He rides his bike to work/goes to work by bike.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Correct the spelling mistakes. Be careful: some sentences have two mistakes.

**ABOUT YOU**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I sometimes have to <strong>look after</strong> children.</th>
<th>☑</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I <strong>often</strong> buy flowers.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I <strong>love</strong> the countryside.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I'm <strong>very healthy</strong>.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I see <strong>lots</strong> of birds in my <strong>area</strong>.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Our <strong>public transport</strong> is <strong>wonderful</strong>.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I'm <strong>often</strong> alone in the evening.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. I eat <strong>fresh fruit</strong> every day.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. I never feel <strong>lonely</strong>.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ABOUT YOU** Are the sentences in Exercise 6 true about you? If not, change them to make them true.
I can talk about shops

A Places to shop

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Places</th>
<th>What they sell</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>market (a number of stalls, outdoors or indoors)</td>
<td>food, sometimes furniture, CDs, books, flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shopping centre (a number of shops, usually indoors)</td>
<td>everything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>department store (a large shop)</td>
<td>almost everything, but not usually food: beds, books, televisions, clothes, perfume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supermarket (a large shop)</td>
<td>food, drinks, cleaning products for the house, shampoo, things for the kitchen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypermarket</td>
<td>the same as a supermarket, but also clothes, TVs, furniture. Hypermarkets are outside towns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butcher's</td>
<td>meat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baker's</td>
<td>bread and cakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chemist's</td>
<td>medicine, e.g. aspirin, also soap, shampoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deli (caterers)</td>
<td>sandwiches, bread, cheese, ham, coffee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paper shop or newsagent's</td>
<td>newspapers, chocolates, cigarettes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Three answers are correct. Circle the wrong answer.

- I got the vegetables from the Supermarket (baker's) market fruit and vegetable shop
- I got the bread from the Hypermarket baker's deli butcher's
- I got the meat from the Supermarket Baker's market butcher's
- I got these jeans from a Market paper shop department store clothes shop
- I got this shampoo from the Deli chemist's supermarket department store
- I got the cheese from a Supermarket market stall deli chemist's
- I got these CDs from the Shopping Centre newsagent's department store music shop

2 Write two things you can buy in each of these places.

- department store: food, television
- deli: sandwiches, coffee
- chemist's: medicine, aspirin
- paper shop or newsagent's: newspapers, chocolate

3 Test yourself. Cover 'Places' and look at 'What they sell'. Can you remember the names of the shops and shopping places?
B Shopping habits

Hypermarkets are so convenient – you can get everything in one place.

I do the supermarket shopping on Thursdays when it’s quiet.

Supermarkets are so busy at the weekend. I don’t like queueing at the checkout!

You can choose from a lot of different things in a supermarket, but I prefer markets. They’re friendlier.

There are six of us in my family, so I fill two trolleys every week!

I get a lot of things on the internet. They always deliver to your home.

---

Glossary

convenient easy and quick to use
get buy
do (the) shopping buy food and things you need often, e.g. soap
queue wait in a line of people
checkout the place in a supermarket where you pay
prefer like something or someone more than another
fill make something full (The trolley in the picture is full.)
trolley

basket

deliver take things to a person or a place

---

4 True or false? Write T or F.

If you have a car, supermarkets are very convenient. T
1 You can’t get CDs in a hypermarket. _____
2 You can fill a trolley or a basket. _____
3 You go to clothes shops to do the shopping. _____
4 You sometimes have to queue when you want to pay. _____
5 You can choose from a lot of different things in small shops. _____
6 You pay at the checkout in a supermarket. _____
7 At a supermarket, you put the things you want to buy in a trolley or basket. _____
8 All shops will deliver the things you buy to your home. _____

5 Complete the words in the questions. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 6.)

1 When do you or your family usually do the shopping? ______________________
2 Do you prefer to shop in supermarkets or small shops? ______________________
3 Do you often have to queue at the checkout? ______________________
4 Do you think supermarkets are convenient? ______________________
5 Do supermarkets in your town deliver things to your home? ______________________
6 Where do you get your fruit and vegetables? ______________________

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 5 or ask another student.
I live in a block of flats near the town centre, in an area called Montpellier. I really like the flat, and my neighbour, Simon, is very friendly.

1 (on) the top floor
2 (on) the second floor
3 (on) the first floor
4 (on) the ground floor
5 garden
6 steps
7 (in) the basement
8 rubbish
9 front door
10 stairs
11 lift
12 flat
13 balcony

1 True or false? Write T or F.
   Helen lives on the second floor. _____
   John and Lucy live on the ground floor. _____
   Miki lives on the top floor. _____
   Anna lives on the first floor. _____
   They put their rubbish in the lift. _____
   Simon lives in the basement. _____
   Ferdy's flat has a balcony. _____
   Rob's flat has a garden. _____
   The steps are at the front door. _____
   Ferdy needs to use the stairs or lift. _____

2 Complete the words.
   t:
   b
   k
   d
   f
   s
   g

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.
**B Houses**

**Glossary**
- **modern** of the present time or old
- **view** what you see from the house
- **utility room** a room where you do the washing, ironing, etc.
- **upstairs**
- **downstairs**
- **outside** not to a house or other building
- **inside**
- **garage** a building where you park your car
- **parking** a place where you can park (leave) your car

**BATHFORD**
Modern family house in this quiet village with lovely views of the countryside. Large living room, dining room, study, modern kitchens and utility room. Upstairs there are four good-sized bedrooms and a family bathroom. Outside there is a large garden, a garage, and further parking for two cars.

4 Find the end of each word.
- **study**
- **view**
- **modern**
- **living room**
- **toilet**
- **kitchen**
- **home**
- **parking**
- **dining room**
- **upstairs**
- **bedroom**
- **utility room**
- **bathroom**

5 Complete the text.
I live in a **modern** house. It's only four years old. It's got a (1) _______ room, dining room, kitchen, two bedrooms and a (2) _______. It's in the town centre, and from the living room I've only got a (3) _______ of the railway station, which isn't very nice. I leave my car on the street because I don't have a (4) _______, but it's got a small (5) _______, so I can eat (6) _______ when it's warm.

My brother's got a house in a village near me, and from the house he's got fantastic (7) _______ of the countryside. Downstairs there's a living room, dining room, large (8) _______ and a (9) _______, where my brother works. (10) _______ there are four (11) _______ and two (12) _______, so there's lots of space when I visit with friends. There's also (13) _______ for two cars, and a large garden. In the summer they eat (14) _______ all the time.

6 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers or ask another student.
1 Do you live in a house or a flat? ____________
2 If it's a flat, which floor are you on? ____________
3 Have you got a garden? If so, how big is it? ____________
4 What's the view? Is it nice? ____________
5 Have you got parking? ____________
6 What rooms have you got in your home? ____________
39  I can describe a kitchen

A  In the kitchen

1  shelf (plural shelves)
2  tap (turn the tap on/off)
3  cup(s)
4  microwave
5  frying pan
6  freezer
7  sink
8  saucer(s)
9  hob
10  saucepan
11  (rubbish) bin
   The bin is full or empty
12  oven
13  fridge
14  washing machine
15  cupboard
16  dishwasher
17  cooker

1  Complete the sentences using vocabulary from the picture.
   ► Put the milk in the fridge.
   1  Put those dirty clothes in the washing machine.
   2  Put the dirty plates in the dishwasher or the sink.
   3  Put the cups and saucers in the cupboard.
   4  Put the books on the shelf.
   5  Put the empty packets in the bin.
   6  Put the meat in the fridge.
   7  Cook the eggs in the frying pan.
   8  Put the ice cream in the fridge.
   9  Is the rubbish bin full?
   10  Heat the soup in the microwave or on the hob.
   11  Could you turn the tap on/off?
   12  Boil the potatoes in that saucepan.

2  ABOUT YOU  Write down anything in the picture you haven't got.
   ► I haven't got a microwave, and my washing machine isn't in the kitchen.

3  Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Say the words.
B Using the kitchen

Housework
1 do the shopping
2 put the shopping away
   (= in the cupboards, fridge, etc)
3 put the dirty clothes in the
   washing machine; turn it on
4 clean the cooker
5 take the washing (= the clothes)
   out of the washing machine
6 make a sandwich
7 empty the bin
8 do the ironing
9 cook lunch for the family
10 do the washing-up

spotlight  do + noun
These phrases are very common in spoken English: do the shopping, do the washing-up,
do the housework, do the ironing
Be careful!
housework = cleaning the house
homework = work; teachers give students to do after class

4 Complete the text.
Saturday is my day for doing the ➪ housework ... First, I go to town and do the (1) ________ .
Then I come back, (2) ________ everything (3) ________ in the cupboards, and (4) ________
the bin. If the kitchen's dirty, I (5) ________ it, and then I (6) ________ a cup of tea. My sister
usually helps me. She (7) ________ all the dirty clothes in the washing machine and (8) ________
the washing out when it's finished. I (9) ________ lunch, but afterwards, we do the
(10) ________ together. When the clothes are dry, I do the (11) ________ .

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.
In your home ...
1 Who does the shopping? ____________ 4 Who cleans the kitchen? ____________
2 Who cooks the dinner? ____________ 5 Who empties the bin? ____________
3 Who does the washing-up? ____________ 6 Who does the ironing? ____________

6 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words.
I can describe a bedroom and bathroom

A Bedroom and bathroom ☞

International student house

Our rooms are all newly furnished, and include: a single bed, bedside table, desk, and chair; chest of drawers, and wardrobe.

There are three bathrooms on each floor: each has a bath, shower, washbasin, mirror, toilet, and bidet.

We provide blankets, but students must bring their own sheets and towels.

1. One word is different. Which one?
   - bedside table
   - toilet
   - wardrobe
   - bath
   - shower
   - mirror
   - desk
   - chest of drawers
   - blanket
   - bed
   - chest of drawers
   - bidet
   - washbasin
   - towel
   - blanket

   Toilet is different. The other two are in a bedroom.

   is different. You can wash in the other two.

   is different. You put clothes in the other two.

   is different. The other two are pieces of furniture.

   is different. The other two are in a bedroom.

   is different. The other two are in a bathroom.

   is different. The other two are on a bed.

2. Write in the missing letter.
   - b
   - b
   - m
   - a
   - r
   - c
   - s
   - b
   - w
   - d
   - s
   - w

   5. wasbasin
   6. tolet
   7. wadrobo
   8. bid
   9. blanke
   10. seet
   11. twel
   12. shoer

3. ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences about your bedroom and bathroom.
   In my bedroom, there's ________________________
   In my bathroom, there's ________________________

4. Test yourself. Cover the text and look at the pictures. Say the words for 1–14.
In the bathroom

- have a wash, you use soap.
- clean your teeth, you use toothpaste and a toothbrush.
- wash your hair, you use shampoo.
- have a shave, you use a razor or an electric razor.
- do your hair, you use a brush or a comb.
- put on or take off make-up, you use make-up and tissues.

You can also put on or wear perfume.

Circle the correct word.

- I wash/clean my teeth with toothpaste or comb.
- I do/put on my hair with a razor or brush.
- Do you have/do a bath every day?
- She puts on/has make-up when she goes out.
- Do you often have a shave/wash with an electric razor?
- He washes/cleans his hair with expensive perfume/shampoo.
- When you take off make-up you use tissues or a comb.

Write a, an or nothing (-).

- I don't use ______ make-up.
- I need ______ new comb.
- Do you want ______ tissue?
- I never use ______ perfume.
- I must buy ______ brush.

I buy ______ shampoo every week.

I have got ______ electric razor?

I just use ______ soap.

I need ______ new toothbrush and ______ toothpaste.

ABOUT YOU

Tick (✓) a or b. Then if possible tell another student your answers.

1. a) I usually have a bath.
   b) I usually have a shower.
2. a) I clean my teeth before breakfast.
   b) I clean my teeth after breakfast.
3. a) I wash my hair twice a week or less.
   b) I wash my hair more than twice a week.
4. a) I usually use a brush on my hair.
   b) I usually use a comb on my hair.
5. For women:
   a) I often wear perfume.
   b) I don't wear perfume very much.
6. For men:
   a) I use an electric razor.
   b) I don't use an electric razor.
41 I can describe a living room

1 window
2 light
3 ceiling
4 wall
5 curtains
6 TV/television
7 picture
8 bookshelves
9 radiator

10 cushion
11 DVD player
12 lamp
13 armchair
14 coffee table
15 fireplace
16 floor
17 sofa
18 rug
19 carpet

An armchair, a sofa and a coffee table are furniture, or pieces of furniture.

1 Look at the picture. True or false? Write T or F.
In the living room, there is only one...

TV T
picture T
light
lamp

2 Complete the words.

picture

3 ABOUT YOUR HOME Write your answers or ask another student.

1 How many windows have you got in your living room?

2 Have you got radiators, a fireplace or both?

3 What have you got on the floor?

4 What's on the walls?

5 Are the lights on the ceiling or the walls?

6 What furniture have you got?

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Say the words.
Review: Places

Unit 34

Complete the sentences.
1. Moscow is in the ________ of Russia.
2. Milan is in the ________ of Italy.
3. Bangkok is in the ________ of Thailand.
4. San Francisco is on the west ________ and New York is on the east ________ of the USA.
5. China is an ________ (very big) country.
6. Paris is the ________ of France.
7. The Nile is the longest ________ in the world.
8. Fujiyama is the highest ________ in Japan.
9. Bondi is a long ________ in Australia.
10. Brazil is ________ for Samba, football, and Carnival.

Unit 35

1. Write the opposite.
   1. north ________
   2. south ________
   3. south-west ________
   4. safe ________
   5. under a million ________
   6. a busy street ________
   7. polluted ________
   8. opinion ________

2. Complete the texts.
   A. Granada is quite a ________ town about 350 km south (1) ________ Madrid. It has a (2) ________ of about 300,000 people. It’s an old town with lots of (3) ________ buildings, and a famous (4) ________ called The Alhambra. It’s a very popular (5) ________ with tourists.
   B. New York is a big (6) ________, which is (7) ________ the Atlantic coast. It’s (8) ________ for a number of things: the (9) ________ of Liberty, Times (10) ________ , and Central (11) ________ . It is a (12) ________ city, with people of many nationalities.

Unit 36

1. Complete the crossword.
   Part of a town, country or the world. ________
   You see this between two hills. ________
   Food is good for you. ________
   You go this on a river. ________
   A person who grows crops to sell. ________
   Horses eat this. ________
   A place you walk between fields. ________
   A large area of water with land around it. ________
   Not with other people. ________
2 Complete the crossword.

1 An animal you can ride.
2 Farmers _______ potatoes, rice, etc.
3 Plants that farmers look after and then sell for food.
4 Unhappy because you are not with other people.
5 If you __________ something, it is yours.
6 A place with fields, farms, woods, etc. outside towns and cities.

Unit 37

1 Complete the words.

A shop where you get sandwiches, coffee, bread, etc. is a ________
A place with shops which is indoors is a _______
A shop where you buy newspapers, chocolates, etc. is a _______
A shop where you get medicine, shampoo, etc. is a _______
A large shop which sells food, things for cleaning, etc. is a _______ or a _______
A shop where you get bread and cakes is a _______
A place where you buy books is a _______
A shop where you buy meat is a _______
A large shop where you can buy almost anything: clothes, beds, etc. is a _______
A place where you can buy CDs, DVDs, etc. is a _______

2 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares make a different word. What is it?

where you buy books _______
wait in a line of people _______
buy the things you need: do the _______
easy and quick to use _______
like something more than another thing _______
a shopping place outdoors where different people sell you food, books, etc. _______
you find these in a market _______
the opposite of ‘outdoors’ _______
in a supermarket, you put things in a trolley or a _______
buy _______
where you pay for things in a big shop _______

The word in the grey squares is ________.
Unit 38

1 Here are some definitions. What are the words?
   ▶ The room where you talk and watch TV. ____________
   1 The room where you wash and have a shower. ____________
   2 The room where you cook food. ____________
   3 The room where you sleep. ____________
   4 The room where you do work/homework. ____________
   5 The place where you put the car. ____________
   6 The thing that takes you from one floor to another floor. ____________
   7 The place outside your house where there are trees and flowers. ____________
   8 The place where you live (a flat or a house). ____________

2 Match 1 – 8 with a – i.
   ▶ quiet__________a floor
   1 front__________b views
   2 lovely__________c of flats
   3 ground__________d village
   4 modern__________e centre
   5 dining__________f door
   6 parking__________g house
   7 block__________h for two cars
   8 town__________i room

Unit 39

1 Write your answers.
   ▶ You boil vegetables in this. ____________
   1 You wash plates and cups in this. ____________ or ____________
   2 You wash clothes in this. ____________
   3 You put rubbish in this. ____________
   4 You cook food very quickly in this. ____________
   5 You put clean plates, cups, and saucers here. ____________
   6 You keep milk and cold drinks in this. ____________
   7 You put ice cream in this. ____________
   8 You cook meat slowly in this. ____________

2 Complete the sentences.
   ▶ Do ____________ the shopping on the way home.
   1 Come home and ____________ the shopping in the cupboards or the fridge.
   2 ____________ the dirty washing in the machine, and ____________ it on.
   3 Forty minutes later, ____________ the machine off and take the washing ____________.
   4 ____________ the washing-up and ____________ the bin.
   5 Finally, ____________ lunch.
Unit 40

1 Put these words in two groups, and give a name to each group.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wardrobe</th>
<th>towel</th>
<th>toilet</th>
<th>blanket</th>
<th>sheet</th>
<th>chest of drawers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shower</td>
<td>washbasin</td>
<td>single bed</td>
<td>desk</td>
<td>bath</td>
<td>bidet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

2 Complete the questions, then answer them.

- What do you use when you wash your hair? __________
- What do you use when you make-up? __________
- What do you use when you shave? __________
- What do you use when you brush your teeth? __________
- What do you use when you wash your hair? __________

Unit 41

Look at the two pictures. Write down ten more differences.

- Picture 1 has got a sofa, but picture 2 hasn’t.

1 __________
2 __________
3 __________
4 __________
5 __________
6 __________
7 __________
8 __________
9 __________
10 __________
I can talk about my school

A School subjects

Chemistry, physics, biology, etc. are school subjects.
ICT = information communication technology
PE = physical education
RE = religious education

1 Complete the words.

2 Write the name of a school subject.

3 ABOUT YOU Circle the correct verb form. Complete the sentences about yourself.

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the subjects.
B The education system

Education in England and Wales

You can ...

- start nursery school at 3
- go to primary school at 5
- go to secondary school at 11 (state school or private school)
- go to university
- stay at school until 18
- leave school at 16
- go to college
- get a job

Some pupils (schoolchildren up to the age of 16) wear a uniform.

5 Put the story in order.
   a. where he learnt to read and write.
   b. He stayed there until he was sixteen.
   c. When Tom was there,
   d. and then he went to college.
   e. After that, he went to secondary school.
   f. He left college when he was 18.
   g. At the age of five,
   h. he started nursery school.
   i. he went to primary school.
   j. and got a job in a bank.

6 Complete the questions, but don’t write answers.

   At what age do children go to school?
   1. When do they start primary school?
   2. Do they usually wear a uniform at primary school?
   3. When do they start secondary school?
   4. When can they get a job?
   5. Do they go to state schools, private schools, or both?

7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6 or ask another student.
C Exams

When I was at secondary school, I went to all the lessons and did my homework, but I didn’t work very hard. So, when I took exams at 16, my results weren’t fantastic. I passed six, which was good, but I failed maths. My worst result was physics—I got a grade E, which was terrible. After that, I went to a sixth form college where I worked hard and did well. I passed all my exams at 18 and went to university. That’s where I am now.

Spotlight

An exam is an important test at the end of a period of study.

- take an exam = sit down and write your answers in the exam
- pass an exam = take an exam and do well, e.g. grade A or 85%
- fail an exam = take an exam and do badly, e.g. grade D or 35%

8 Look at Rafael’s exam results on the right and answer the questions.

- How many exams did he take? __________
- Did he take an exam in chemistry? __________
- How many did he pass? __________
- How many did he fail? __________
- What was his best grade? __________
- What was his worst grade? __________
- What did he get in English? __________

9 Complete the questions.

- Six out of ten isn’t a very good __________.
  1. I have to __________ an English exam tomorrow.
  2. Did you __________ your homework last night?
  3. Paula did very __________ in her German exam; she got a __________ A.
  4. I got my exam __________ yesterday. I passed all of them.
  5. Andre is very unhappy at the moment. He’s doing __________ at school, and last week he __________ an important maths exam.
  6. Maths is my __________ subject. I’m terrible at it.

10 About you Write answers to the questions or ask another student.

- How long are/were your lessons at school? ________________
- Do/Did you work hard at school most of the time? ________________
- At what age will/did you take important exams? ________________
- How many will/did you take? ________________
- Will/Did you pass all of them? ________________

STUDY AND WORK 111
43 I can talk about university  

A A university degree  

I started university two years ago, when I was nineteen, and I'm doing a degree in Spanish and French. The course lasts three years, and there are three terms a year. I work in the library a lot because — like many undergraduates — I have to write lots of essays. I also have to take exams, and last term I failed and had to take it again. I got the result two weeks ago; fortunately I passed this time. When I've got my degree — a BA — I want to do research for a PhD.

Glossary

do a degree study at university for three or four years

course a number of classes on a subject, e.g. an English course

term a period of study, usually about ten weeks

library a place where you can read and borrow books

undergraduate a student doing a first degree (a graduate has a degree)

write an essay do a piece of writing on a subject again one more time

fortunately We say fortunately when we give good news, or unfortunately

BA/BSc Bachelor of Arts/Science

MA/MSc Master of Arts/Science

do research study a subject for a long time to learn new information

PhD Doctor of Philosophy

Spotlight: How long does it last?

To last is to continue for a period of time.

How long does the film last? — Two hours.

The Masters course lasts two years.

1 Circle the correct word.

1 She did an English ___

2 I want to do ___ a degree in maths.

3 A ___ lasts about ten weeks.

4 I've got a BA/BSc in physics.

2 Complete the dialogues.

How long does the term last? — About twelve weeks.

1 Have you got a ___ degree? — Yes, a BSc.

2 Did she have to ___ an essay? — Yes, three, in fact.

3 Can you ___ research next year? — Yes, I want to do a ___.

4 Did he get his exam results? — Yes, he passed.

5 Can he take the exam ___? — Yes, next summer.

6 How long does the course ___? — It's only one term.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1 How long do you need to study for a degree in chemistry?

2 How long do you need to study for a Masters degree?

3 How long does a university term last?

4 How long does a school term last?

5 If you fail exams, can you always take them again?
### University subjects and people

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Degree subject</th>
<th>Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>medicine</td>
<td>a doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psychology</td>
<td>a psychologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>economics</td>
<td>an economist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law</td>
<td>a lawyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politics</td>
<td>a politician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineering</td>
<td>an engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>architecture</td>
<td>an architect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computer science</td>
<td>an IT manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>journalism</td>
<td>a journalist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business studies</td>
<td>a businessman/woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a manager</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4. Complete the sentences. Use the degree subject on the right to help you.

- He always wanted to be a [subject].
- She wants to be a [subject].
- When did he become an [subject]?
- She's studying to become an [subject].
- Why does he want to be a [subject]?
- She works as an [subject].
- I don't know anyone who wants to be a [subject].
- Is it difficult to become a [subject]?
- I knew he'd become a [subject].

### 5. Complete the words. ‘Degree subject’ or ‘person’? Write DS or P.

- jo -mal -ml _m
- _y w _r
- ar -it -ct _-
- c -mp -t _sd -c _-
- s -tw _r -e -g -ne _-
- ps -ch _l -g _-
- b -s -n -ss st _d -s

### 6. Test yourself. Cover the subjects and people and look at the pictures. Can you remember the subjects and people?
## I can name jobs

**What do you do?**

**What's your job?**

**I'm ...**

We use **a/an** when we say what people's jobs are.

- **He's a builder:** He's a builder.
- **She's a teacher and he's an engineer:** She's a teacher and he's an engineer.

### Word List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>self-employed</td>
<td>Are you <strong>self-employed?</strong></td>
<td>working for yourself, not for a company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unemployed</td>
<td>I'm <strong>unemployed, but I'm looking for a job.</strong></td>
<td>with no job, but wanting to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retired</td>
<td>My grandfather is <strong>retired now.</strong></td>
<td>= My grandfather has stopped work because he is over 65.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>housewife or househusband</td>
<td>She's a <strong>housewife</strong> now, but she was a lawyer.</td>
<td>a woman or a man who looks after the house and family and doesn't go out to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boss</td>
<td>Who's the <strong>boss</strong> in this company?</td>
<td>a person who tells people what to do in their jobs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Circle the correct answer.
   - The most important person in the company is the **boss**
   - A **police officer/vet** works with dogs and cats.
   - A **shop assistant/dentist** sells things.
   - A **housewife/nurse** works in a hospital.
   - Retired people are usually **young/old**
   - An unemployed person **has/not** got a job.
   - A **businesswoman/soldier** can be self-employed.
   - A businessman usually has a **secretary/husband**.
   - A **pilot/dentist** looks after people’s teeth.
   - A **lorry driver/chef** works in a kitchen.
   - A **builder/cleaner** works outdoors a lot.

2 Correct the spelling mistakes.
   - teacher **teacher**
   - businessman **businessman**
   - shop assistant **shop assistant**
   - hairdresser **hairdresser**
   - polis officer **police officer**
   - retained **retrained**
   - bidder **bidder**
   - lorry driver **lorry driver**
   - cleaner **cleaner**
   - housewife **housewife**
   - self-employed **self-employed**
   - soldier **soldier**

3 Complete the sentences.
   - Does she stay at home with the children? – Yes, she’s a **housewife**.
   - Could she cut my hair? – Yes, she’s a **hairdresser**.
   - Does he work for Alitalia? – Yes, he’s a **pilot**.
   - Has she got a job? – Yes, she’s employed.
   - Does he tell people what to do? – Yes, he’s the **boss**.
   - She’s seventy – has she got a job? – No, she’s **unemployed**.
   - Does he work for other people? – No, he’s self-employed.
   - Does she work with students? – Yes, she’s a **teacher**.
   - Does he work in that restaurant? – Yes, he’s a **chef**.

4 ABOUT YOU: Think about your family and people you know. Write their names if they do the jobs below.
   - a nurse **my friend Christa**
   - a vet **I don’t know anyone who’s a vet.**
   - a soldier **Mr. Ronski**
   - a secretary **my mother**
   - a chef **my sister**
   - a hairdresser **my friend Julia**
   - someone who is retired **my grandfather**
   - a teacher **my math teacher**
   - a pilot **my uncle**
   - a dentist **my dentist**
   - a businessman or woman **my father**
   - a boss **my boss**

5 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. What are the jobs? Then cover the words and examples in the table and look at the meanings. Can you say the words?
45 I can describe a job

Do Unit 44 first

A Basic information

Where does he work?
He works in ... an office, a factory, a hospital

Who does she work for?
She works for a car company, e.g., Toyota, an airline, e.g. Cathay Pacific

What hours does he work?
He's got a full-time job, e.g., 40 hours a week, a part-time job, e.g., 15 hours a week, long hours, e.g., 12 hours a day from nine to five

How much does she earn?
She earns a lot. Her salary is $80,000 a year. He doesn't earn very much. He gets low wages.

Glossary

earn receive money for the work that you do
salary money you receive every month for the work that you do
wages money you receive every week for the work that you do lower if you earn less wages, you earn less than is normal, are high

1 Complete the sentences with words and phrases in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>office</th>
<th>an American airline</th>
<th>she work</th>
<th>hours a day</th>
<th>work for</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>long hours</td>
<td>earn much</td>
<td>job</td>
<td>ten to six</td>
<td>a factory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. He works ________________ .
2. She works ten ________________ .
3. I work in ________________ .
4. He works in an ________________ ?
5. Who do you ________________ ?
6. Where does ________________ ?
7. She works for ________________ .
8. She doesn't ________________ .
9. It's a full-time ________________ .
10. I work from ________________ .

2 Complete the text.

My sister's a nurse in our local hospital. She only works (1) ________________ -time — about 15 hours (2) ________________ week — and she doesn't (3) ________________ much money.

Nurses in our country generally get (4) ________________ wages. Her husband is a doctor, and he works very long (5) ________________ — sometimes 14 hours (6) ________________ . He earns about $90,000 a (7) ________________ which is a very high (8) ________________ in our country.

3 ABOUT YOU If you have a job, write answers to the questions. If you don't, ask someone who has a job.

1. What's your job?
2. Who do you work for?
3. Where do you work?
4. How many hours do you work?
B What do you have to do?  

Daniel Alessi, architect
I design buildings, but I also have to:
• meet clients and discuss problems with them
• go to meetings with colleagues
• write reports
I spend a lot of time talking to people.

Eliane Sotano, secretary
I only work part-time now. I have to:
• make phone calls
• send letters, fax and e-mails
• organize meetings for my boss
• type reports
I spend a lot of time answering the phone.

spotlight Spend time doing something
Spend time means to do something for a period of time:
I spend a lot of time working and travelling.

I spent a week writing the report.

4 There are mistakes in six sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. I spent a day to meet clients.  **meeting**
2. He does a lot of phone calls.
3. I have a meet this afternoon.
4. She spends a lot of time type.
5. She designs offices.
6. Could you organize a meeting?
7. I wrote the report last night.
8. We discussed about our problems.
9. I answered to the phone.

Glossary

have to do something must do something
client a person who pays an architect,
lawyer, etc. for his or her work and help
discuss something talk about something
not discuss something
colleague a person who works with you
report a piece of writing giving
information about work you have done
send You write a letter, then you send it
to the person.
organize If you organize a meeting, you
find a time and a place when everybody
can go to it.
answer the phone pick up the phone
when it rings and speak

5 Complete the text.

I have a really interesting new job in the office of a language school. It's a full-time job and I work from nine to five. I (1) new students when they arrive at the school, and of course, I (2) the phone and (3) letters and emails. I (4) a lot of time (5) phone calls to help students who don't speak much English. I really like my other (6) in the office — they're very friendly, and if I have any problems we can (7) them. I also (8) meetings for my boss with important (9) from other countries. Sometimes, I (10) to go to meetings with her. It's a nice place to work.
46 I can talk about using a computer

A The computer

Correct the spelling mistakes.

1 webcam 6 monitor 11 speaker
2 printer 7 disk 12 keyboard
3 laptop 8 mouse 13 mouse mat
4 hard drive 9 hard copy/printout
5 screen 10 memory stick

Correct the spelling mistakes.

1 hard copie — hard copy
2 screen —
3 maus — mouse
4 personal commuter —
5 memory stick —

5 monitor —
6 keyboard —
7 disque —
8 webcam —

Complete the sentences.

1 You type information using the keyboard.
2 You listen to music using the printer.
3 The information in your computer is on the hard drive.
4 A small computer you can carry is called a laptop.
5 You can keep a copy of information on your computer on a memory stick.
6 You move the mouse with your hand.
7 You put the mouse on the screen.
8 You read your emails on the screen.

About you. Write your answers or ask another student.

1 Have you got a PC? If so, what kind is it?
2 Have you got a printer? If so, how often do you use it?
3 Have you got a laptop? If so, where do you keep it?
4 Do you keep photos on your computer? If so, what kind of photos?
5 Have you got a webcam? If so, what do you use it for?

Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the words. Say the words.
B Word processing

1. I opened a new document and typed a letter.
2. I cut a sentence from the *beginning* of the letter.
3. I moved it to the end. (I clicked on the 'paste' icon.)
4. I saved the document in my 'letters' folder.
5. I printed it out or I did a printout.
6. I made a backup copy on a disk.

5 Match 1 – 7 with a – h.

- You type
- You open
- You print out
- You cut
- You click on
- You make
- You move
- You save

• a paper copy of your letter.
• a backup copy.
• the letter you typed in a folder.
• your letter or report.
• a word or sentence from your document.
• a sentence to a different place.
• a new document.
• an icon.

6 Complete the sentences.

- Which folder did you **save** the document in?
- She **saved** on the copy icon.
- You can write 'Hello' at the **beginning** of an email, and 'best wishes' at the **end**.

- I always **made** a backup copy of my work.
- I typed a letter to my boss and then I **cut** a printout.
- My letter wasn't very interesting, so I **cut** a few sentences.
- Did you **save** your work in the correct folder?
- When you **cut** a new document, you can start writing.
- The **beginning** and the end of the letter were good, but the **cut** part was terrible.

7 Test yourself. Cover the words. Can you remember what the icons mean?
I can use email and the internet

A Email

Have you checked your emails this morning?
Yes, Karl sent me an email with an attachment, and I have to forward it to Mark.
And I got an email from Alice about her new car. I'll reply to it later.

1 True or false? Write T or F.

There are two messages in Lucy's inbox. T
1 Lucy received two junk mail messages. F
2 Lucy has to send an attachment to Mark. F
3 There's an attachment with Alice's email. T
4 Lucy sent Karl an email. T
5 Lucy hasn't deleted Alice's message. F
6 Lucy will reply to Walkers' email. F
7 Lucy got an email from Karl. T
8 Karl has got Mark's email address. F

2 One word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.

I have to the junk mail. delete 4 Have you checked your? 
1 I must reply Jean's email. 
2 Did you message? 
3 I received an from Li today.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1 How often do you send emails?
2 Who do you send them to?
3 What kind of junk mail do you receive?
4 Do people send you attachments? What's in them?
5 Do you always reply to emails quickly?
B  The internet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
<th>ABOUT YOU</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What’s your <strong>email address</strong>?</td>
<td>It’s <a href="mailto:louella@yahoo.co.uk">louella@yahoo.co.uk</a></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you buy things <strong>on the internet</strong>?</td>
<td>Yes, I buy books.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What’s a <strong>web address</strong> for news in your country?</td>
<td>It’s <a href="http://www.bbc.co.uk/news">www.bbc.co.uk/news</a></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which <strong>websites</strong> do you visit most?</td>
<td>eBay and MySpace.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you got <strong>broadband</strong>?</td>
<td>Yes, it’s very fast.</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How often do you <strong>go online</strong>?</td>
<td>I use the internet every evening.</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you <strong>visit chatrooms</strong>?</td>
<td>Yes, I often chat online.</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you <strong>download</strong> music onto your computer?</td>
<td>Yes, or I download it onto my MP3 player.</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which <strong>search engines</strong> do you <strong>use</strong>?</td>
<td>I use Google and Yahoo.</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glossary

- **online** (not on internet)
- **web address** = internet address
- **broadband** With a broadband connection, you can get information from the internet very fast.
- **fast** (also quick) = slow (150 kph for cars is fast; 20 kph is slow.)
- **online** on the internet
- **chatroom** a place on the internet where people read and reply to messages, usually about a subject, e.g. cars, music (The verb is chat.)
- **download** If you download information from the internet, you copy it to your computer. (The information is called data.)
- **MP3 player** a small machine you can listen to music on, e.g. an iPod

4 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>online</th>
<th>on the internet</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>web address</td>
<td>email address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>visit a website</td>
<td>go to a website</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>a search engine</td>
<td>a website</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>fast</td>
<td>quick</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>MP3 player</td>
<td>CD player</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>download songs</td>
<td>copy songs from the internet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>go online</td>
<td>use the internet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>visit a chatroom</td>
<td>chat online</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>broadband</td>
<td>download</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>computer information</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Complete the sentences.

1. We use different __________ engines.
2. It’s not very expensive to __________ music from the internet.
3. Do you spend a lot of time __________ the internet?
4. I’d like to get __________ because my internet connection is very slow.
5. My favourite __________ is eBay.
6. You can __________ websites or chatrooms.

6 ABOUT YOU Complete the ‘about you’ column in the table, or ask another student the questions.
Review: Study and work

Unit 42

1 Complete the names of the school subjects.
   a. math
   b.
   c.
   d.
   e.
   f.
   g.
   h.
   i.
   j.

2 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.
   a. at PE
   b. a uniform
   c. secondary school
   d. at school until 18
   e. to school
   f. a job
   g. university
   h. homework
   i. hard
   j. an exam

3 Complete the dialogues with one word.
   Did he stay on at school? ~ No, he left at 16.
   Did you do well in your exam? ~ No, I did .
   She passed the exam, didn’t she? ~ No, she it.
   Nico didn’t go to a private school. ~ That’s right, he went to a school.
   Are you good at chemistry? ~ No, I’m at it!
   Is Riete’s daughter at primary school? ~ No, she’s only 4 - she’s at school.
   Is Jao the worst at maths? ~ No! He’s the . I He’s very good at it.

Unit 43

1 Complete the text with a word in the correct form.
   Last month my sister started university. She’s a degree in computer science. 
   The course three years, and there are three ten-week modules in every year. She has to a lot of essays and pass exams. 
   If she passes her final exams, she’ll get her degree. If she does well, after that she can do a .
2 Complete the words in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>People</th>
<th>Subjects</th>
<th>Phrases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>journalist</td>
<td>medic</td>
<td>do research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undergrad</td>
<td>econon</td>
<td>do a degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engin</td>
<td>architect</td>
<td>write an essay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law</td>
<td>bus</td>
<td>studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politic</td>
<td>polit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 44

Complete the sentences with words from the box. You can use each word more than once.

pilot dentist retired nurse businessman/businesswoman builder
police officer unemployed vet soldier hairdresser shop assistant

► You have to stand up or walk a lot if you are a nurse, a police officer, a hairdresser, a soldier, a builder, or a shop assistant.

1 You probably have to go to university to be ________________________________
2 You need to be good with your hands to be ________________________________
3 You need to be good at maths or with numbers to be __________________________
4 You probably have a lot of free time if you are ______________________________
5 You usually have to wear a uniform if you are ______________________________
6 You work in an office most of the time if you are ____________________________

Unit 45

1 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.

► write ______ a the phone
1 send _____ b reports ✓
2 make _____ c problems
3 answer _____ d clients
4 organize _____ e buildings
5 discuss _____ f long hours
6 work for _____ g meetings
7 design _____ h phone calls
8 meet _____ i a computer company
9 work _____ j emails

REVIEW: STUDY AND WORK 123
2 Complete the conversation.

What's your job? – I work (1) in an office.
Do you work long hours? – No, it’s part- (2).
How many hours is that? – Three hours (3) a day.
And what do you have to do? – I (4) a lot of time sending emails.
Do you get a good salary? – No, I don’t (5) very much.
What about the people you work with? – Oh, my (6) are very nice.

Unit 46

1 Complete the words and phrases.

Do you need hard copy?
1 Did you bring your laptop?
2 It’s a nice key.
3 I need a new mouse.
4 What’s a memory?
5 Did you make a back copy?
6 The information is on the hard drive.
7 Can you do a print, please?
8 Have you got a camera?

2 Complete the crossword. What is the word in the grey squares?

The word in the grey squares is ____________________.
Unit 47

1 Find eight more words or phrases in the circle.
   ► MP3 player
   ____________________________
   ____________________________
   ____________________________
   ____________________________

2 Complete the crossword.

I must ____________ to her email.
1 Send it as an ____________.
2 Did you get my ____________?
3 Do you often go ____________?
4 I always ____________ junk mail.
5 My computer is very ____________.
6 How many emails do you ____________?
7 Have you got ____________?
8 I spend hours on the ____________.
9 Did you ____________ my email?
10 He doesn’t ____________ email very much.
11 Do you often ____________ chatrooms?

Look at the vocabulary building tables on pages 199 to 201.
48 I can say what I like

A Love it or hate it?

1. I love football.  
2. I really like it.  
3. I like it.  
4. I quite like it.  
5. I think it’s OK.  
6. I don’t like it very much.  
7. I hate football.

B Who likes it more? A or B?

A quite likes coffee. B really likes coffee.  
1. A doesn’t like studying. B thinks studying is OK.  
3. A really likes sport. B thinks it’s OK.  
4. A doesn’t like shopping very much. B doesn’t like shopping.  
5. A hates pop music. B doesn’t like pop music very much.  

C Correct the mistakes.

1. I hate it chocolate.  
2. They don’t like to doing homework very much.  
3. He doesn’t like very much speaking English.  
4. I like quite shopping.  
5. She doesn’t like drive.  
6. I think tennis OK.  
7. I like really going out with friends.  
8. She loves watch sport.

D Do you like watching tennis?

Do you like watching tennis?  

E ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or tell another student your answers.

1. I ____________ watching TV.  
2. I ____________ studying English.  
3. I ____________ driving.  
4. I ____________ shopping for clothes.  
5. I ____________ cleaning the house.  
6. I ____________ writing emails.  
7. I ____________ talking on the phone.  
8. I ____________ going to the cinema.
B It’s my favourite thing

meetpeopleweb.com

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Mirko Zitec</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Work</td>
<td>I work for a TV company. It’s a wonderful job — I love it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Study</td>
<td>I’m learning to play the guitar. It’s good fun and my teacher’s fantastic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sports</td>
<td>My favourite sport is tennis, but I also enjoy playing football.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV/cinema</td>
<td>I don’t watch TV — it’s very boring, but I’m interested in old films from the 1960s. I prefer old films to modern ones, in fact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music</td>
<td>I’m very keen on jazz; I go to a club every Friday.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wonderful</td>
<td>very good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fantastic</td>
<td>very good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fun</td>
<td>If something is fun it makes you happy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>favourite</td>
<td>Your favourite thing or person is the one you like most.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>If you enjoy doing something, you like it a lot and it makes you happy. (The adjective is enjoyable.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doing</td>
<td>If you enjoy doing something, you like it a lot and it makes you happy. (The adjective is enjoyable.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be keen on</td>
<td>like someone or something more than another person or thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>something</td>
<td>like or be interested in something</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spotlight interesting/interested

I think modern art is interesting means ‘I’m interested in modern art.’

not I’m interested in modern art.

4 Write eight more sentences using words from columns 1, 2, and 3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It’s</td>
<td>not interested</td>
<td>boss.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>the party</td>
<td>city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m</td>
<td>favourite</td>
<td>watching TV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>film is ‘Tootsie’.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>fantastic</td>
<td>on tennis?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He’s</td>
<td>a wonderful</td>
<td>in politics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was</td>
<td>you keen</td>
<td>programme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s</td>
<td>prefers reading</td>
<td>good fun?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>a boring</td>
<td>to writing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Complete the questions, using the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>interesting</th>
<th>fun</th>
<th>interested</th>
<th>keen</th>
<th>enjoy</th>
<th>favourite</th>
<th>prefer</th>
<th>enjoyable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DO YOU think flying is enjoyable?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is learning English good fun?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like meat to fish?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What’s your been city?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you interested in sport?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you keen on classical music?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you prefer walking in the countryside?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you enjoy history?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ABOUT YOU

6 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 5, or ask another student.

HOBBIES AND INTERESTS 127
49 I can talk about sport

A Games

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>game</th>
<th>place</th>
<th>equipment</th>
<th>score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>football</td>
<td>pitch</td>
<td>goal/football</td>
<td>1 – 0 one nil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 – 1 two one on two goals to one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rugby</td>
<td>pitch</td>
<td>rugby ball</td>
<td>10 – 6 ten six on ten points to six</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice hockey</td>
<td>rink</td>
<td>stick/puck</td>
<td>3 – 2 three two on three goals to two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volleyball</td>
<td>court</td>
<td>net</td>
<td>15 – 10 fifteen points to ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis</td>
<td>court</td>
<td>net/racket</td>
<td>6 – 3 six three on six games to three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tennis ball</td>
<td>6 – 2 is one set in tennis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basketball</td>
<td>court</td>
<td>basket</td>
<td>60 – 44 sixty points to forty-four</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Combine words to find games, places, equipment and scores.
   - volleyball  
   - pitch 
   - tennis 
   - ice
   - football 
   - ball 
   - basket 
   - nil
   - racket 
   - three 
   - hockey 
   - ball

2 True or false? Write T or F. Change the false sentences and make them true.
   - You score goals in basketball.  
     F You score points in basketball.
   - Sticks and rackets are equipment.  
     T
   - You have a net in tennis and volleyball.  
     T
   - You score points in ice hockey.  
     F
   - You play football on a court.  
     F
   - You play ice hockey with rackets.  
     T
   - You play volleyball on a court.  
     T
   - You score points in rugby.  
     F
   - You play rugby with a puck.  
     F

3 Complete the sentences.
   - I need to get a new tennis racket.
   - I watched a fantastic match of ice hockey on TV last night.
   - People who play tennis are usually very tall.
   - It was six to four to Federer in the second set.
   - What was the football result? – It was three nil (3–0).
   - The football pitch is next to the tennis court.
Correct the bold words.

4 Shevchenko did two goals. scored
1 Lazio have a play next Saturday. play
2 Inter are playing with Parma. playing with
3 AC Milan are number one of the table. number one
4 Treviso lost 3 – 1 with Fiorentina. lost
5 Parma beat Sampdoria. beat
6 Milan won their game last week. won
7 Palermo draw with AS Roma. drew
8 Lazio won Livorno 3 – 1. win

Complete the sentences.

4 They scored in the second half. scored
1 It’s an important draw against Valencia. draw
2 We are playing 1 – 2 to Barcelona. play
3 Sevilla 2 – 2 Villarreal. 2 – 2
4 It was 0 – 0 at half-time. 0 – 0
5 On Sunday Espanyol beat Real Betis 2 – 1. beat
6 Ronaldinho scored the goal. scored
7 We won our last match 4 – 1. won
8 They were 1 – 0 at half-time. were
9 What was the final result? result

5 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Look at the football scores in a newspaper this weekend. Write down the final scores in English, and the people who scored the goals.

Bayern Munich beat Borussia Dortmund 1 – 0. Ballack scored in the 34th minute.
### A Common activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I go ...</th>
<th>I play ...</th>
<th>I do some ...</th>
<th>I do (quite) a lot of ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>camping</td>
<td>cards</td>
<td>travelling</td>
<td>I collect things (e.g. stamps).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skiing</td>
<td>fishing</td>
<td>table tennis</td>
<td>I watch TV and DVDs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the cinema</td>
<td>computer games</td>
<td>flower arranging</td>
<td>I spend time with friends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the gym</td>
<td>the guitar</td>
<td>drawing and painting</td>
<td>I make my own clothes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### What do you do in your free time?

1. Can you do these things inside your home? Or do you have to do them in another place?
   - watch TV __________ inside
   - go to the gym __________ another place
   - go fishing __________
   - do a lot of cooking __________
   - do flower arranging __________
   - do some drawing __________
   - go camping __________
   - play cards __________
   - do a lot of travelling __________
   - play computer games __________

2. Complete the sentences with go, play, do, collect, or spend.
   - I never __________ cards.
   - Do you often __________ to the cinema?
   - My brother __________ old clocks.
   - I'd like to __________ the guitar.
   - She __________ a lot of cooking.
   - Do you __________ table tennis?
   - Do you __________ time with your family?
   - They __________ skiing every February.
   - She __________ quite a lot of travelling in spring.
   - She __________ all her own dresses.

3. ABOUT YOU Look at the table again. Write ‘yes’ by the ones you do now. Tick (✓) the ones you would like to do. Put a cross (X) by the ones you aren’t interested in.

4. Test yourself. Cover the words and say the names of the activities.
B Hobbies

Favourite hobbies in Russia

Russian people have many hobbies. Older people enjoy gardening, fishing and repairing cars. For younger people, there are various clubs in school where children can learn many activities. Popular hobbies include sport, playing musical instruments, computers, listening to music, cooking and collecting different things.

Alexandra: “I like listening to rock and classical music. I also like playing football with my friends. But my favourite hobby is shooting (you can see me in the photo) and I’m quite good at it.”

Veronica: “I have many hobbies: cooking, reading, drawing, and singing in the shower. My favourite is drawing. It’s wonderful to see pictures appearing on paper.”

Dima: “I play the guitar, and I can sing Russian and English songs. I’m good at swimming, snowboarding and skiing. I also like travelling very much.”

5 True or false? Correct the false sentences.

1. Alexandra doesn’t like rock music. False. She likes rock music.
2. Older people enjoy gardening. True.
4. Veronica’s favourite hobby is reading. False. It’s drawing.
5. Dima has various hobbies. True.
6. Veronica’s quite good at shooting. False. She’s good at swimming.
8. Younger people like repairing cars. False. They like it less.

6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1. What’s your favourite hobby?
2. What hobbies are popular with older people?
3. What hobbies are popular with younger people?
4. What classical music do you listen to?
5. Can you play a musical instrument? If so, what?
6. Are you a good singer?
A Pop and rock 🎵

Arctic Monkeys are a four-piece band from Sheffield, England. They first became well known in 2004 when people were able to download their music from the internet. Their first two singles went to number 1 in the UK singles chart in 2005, and their first album, ‘Whatever People Say I Am, That’s What I’m Not’, sold over 350,000 copies in its first week.

The group are: Alex Turner, who is the lead singer and plays the guitar, Jamie Cook and Nick O’Malley, who both play the guitar, and Matthew Heldt, who is the drummer and also sings.

1. What can you remember? Circle the correct answer.
   - There are four people in the band.
   - They first became well known in 2004/2005.
   - People were able/unable to download music in 2004.
   - Their first two/three singles went to number 1.
   - Their first single/album sold over 350,000 copies in the first week.
   - Alex Turner/Jamie Cook is the lead singer.
   - Matthew Heldt plays the guitar/drums.

2. Complete the sentences.
   - Paul McCartney plays the ________.
   - Another word for a band is a _____________.
   - The most important singer is the _____________ singer.
   - Someone who plays the drums is the _____________.
   - A CD with one song on it is a _____________.
   - A CD with about ten songs on it is an _____________.
   - The _____________ is the list of singles that sell most in a week.
   - The Beatles first became well ____________ in the 1960s.
   - You can _____________ music from the internet.

3. ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.
   1. Who’s your favourite group? _____________________________.
   2. Who’s in the band, and what instruments do they play? _____________________________.
   3. When did they first become well known? _____________________________.
   4. What’s the name of one of their singles? _____________________________.
   5. What’s the name of one of their albums? _____________________________.
   6. What’s your favourite song by this band? _____________________________.

Glossary
- band e.g. Coldplay, Franz Ferdinand, U2 (also group)
- well known synonyms famous
- be able to If you are able to do something, you can do it. e.g. unable
- download music copy music
- computer, MP3 player, etc.
- single one song on a CD
- number 1 the single that sells the most in one week
- the singles chart the list of pop music singles that sell the most in one week
- album a number of songs, usually about 10, on a CD
- lead singer the most important singer
B Classical music

A concert of classical music.

Sir Simon Rattle, conductor of the Berlin Philharmonic Orchestra.

Vanessa Mae, violinist, playing a violin concerto by Mozart.

Pianist Sviatoslav Richter, playing one of Beethoven's piano sonatas.

 Opera singer Cecilia Bartoli, performing in Cool Fan Tutte.

Cellist Yo Yo Ma, playing the cello concerto by the English composer, Edward Elgar.

We say a book by (Tolstoy), a song by (Robbie Williams), a symphony by (Mozart), a painting by (Picasso), a film by (Martin Scorsese), etc.

4 Correct the spelling mistakes.

- violista violinist
- conductor
- orchestre orchestra
- classical
- concert
- cello
- composer
- performing
- pianiste pianist

5 Complete the sentences.

- Music by Bach, Brahms or Mozart is classical music.
- A large group of people who play classical music together is called an orchestra.
- The person who stands in front of them is the conductor.
- A person who plays the piano is a pianist.
- A person who plays the violin is a violinist.
- A person who plays the cello is a cellist.
- A person who sings opera is an opera singer.
- ‘Carmen’ is an opera by Bizet.
- Last night we went to a classical music concert. Pacido Domingo was performing with the London Symphony Orchestra. It was fantastic.

6 Cover the texts and look at the pictures. What can you see in each one?
52 I can talk about films

A Describing films

A thriller is often exciting.

A comedy is funny.

A war film is often violent.

A love story is romantic.

A action film is exciting.

A horror film is frightening.

A cartoon is often funny.

spotlight What kind of...?

What kind of film is it?
→ It's a thriller.
What kind of music do you like?
→ Rock music.

1 Make kinds of film from the letters.

rwa mlf  
1 nilhft
2 moyed
3 tanico  

war film

4 onacrot
5 vole rosty
6 rohor limf

2 Match 1–5 with a–f.

an exciting  
1 a romantic
2 a frightening
3 a violent
4 a funny
5 an exciting

a war film

b comedy
c love story
d action film

e thriller
f horror film

Write down new words in a notebook.

3 Write one adjective to describe each picture.

→ exciting

1
2
3
4

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the different kinds of film in the pictures at the top of the page.
B What’s on? 🍿

A What’s on at the cinema?
B I think it’s about music but I’m not sure.
A Ok. Where’s it on?
B It’s at the ABC cinema.

Mercedes (M) and Enrique (E) are talking.
M What’s on at the cinema?
E There’s a film on called Rumor Has It.
M Mmm. What kind of movie is it?
E It’s a romantic comedy. It’s about a woman and her relationship with her boyfriend and family. It’s had good reviews.
M Oh. Who’s in it?
E Er, it stars Kevin Costner and Jennifer Aniston.
M Oh, I like Kevin Costner – he’s a good actor. Who’s the director?
E Rob Reiner. He made When Harry Met Sally.
M Right. And where’s it on?
E The Odeon.
M Ok. Let’s go and see it.

Glossary
What’s on? = ‘What film can we see?’
cinema = a place where you see films
movie = a film
It’s about ... = The subject is ...
review = an opinion of a film in a newspaper or on the radio, TV or internet
star = one of the main actors in a film
(The person is a star.)
actor = e.g. Kevin Costner or Jennifer Aniston
(A female actor can also be called an actress.)
director = person who makes a film, e.g. Steven Spielberg
Where’s it on? = Where can we see it?
see a film = at the cinema (see watch a film at the cinema)

5 Complete the conversation.

A It’s on
B What’s on at the cinema?
A Oh, what (1) ________ of film is it?
B It’s a thriller.
A What’s it (2) ________?
B I’m not sure, but it’s had good (3) ________.
A Oh, and who’s (4) ________ it?
B It’s Ralph Fiennes and Rachel Weiss.
A They’re both good (6) ________
B Who’s the (7) ________?
A A Brazilian called Fernando Meirelles.
B OK. And where’s it (8) ________?
A At the ABC cinema.
B Let’s go and (9) ________ it.
A Fine.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1 What kind of films do you like?
2 What was the last film you saw?
3 Where was it on?
4 Who are the stars of the film?
5 Who’s the director?
6 What’s it about?
53 I can talk about the media

A What is the media? 🎥

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>media</td>
<td>The media often write about famous people.</td>
<td>TV, radio, newspapers, magazines and the internet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magazine</td>
<td>Do you read women’s magazines?</td>
<td>Something you can buy every week or month, often with stories and coloured photos e.g. Time, Hole.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opinion</td>
<td>What’s your opinion of the events?</td>
<td>what you think about something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>report</td>
<td>Journalists report the news from all over the world.</td>
<td>give information on the news; the person is a reporter (= journalist)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>event</td>
<td>The Olympic Games is a very big event.</td>
<td>something important that happens. It can be good or bad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die</td>
<td>Fortunately, nobody died in the accident.</td>
<td>stop living</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>war</td>
<td>The two countries were at war for ten years.</td>
<td>If a country is at war, it is fighting with another country; when a war ends, there is peace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disaster</td>
<td>The tsunami was a terrible disaster.</td>
<td>something very bad that happens, often when a lot of people die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celebrity</td>
<td>There were a lot of celebrities at the first night of the film.</td>
<td>famous person, usually from TV, film or sport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advertisement</td>
<td>There are too many adverts on TV and in the papers.</td>
<td>text, picture or short film which tries to sell you something</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>What do the media say about him?</th>
<th>What does the advert say about him?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>There is peace between the two countries.</td>
<td>There is war between the two countries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>What’s your opinion of the news?</td>
<td>What do you think of the news?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>It was a great event.</td>
<td>It was a great advertisement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>He is reporting from Seoul.</td>
<td>He is giving the news from Seoul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>I read it in an article.</td>
<td>I read it in an advertisement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>She’s a TV celebrity.</td>
<td>She’s on TV a lot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Where did he live?</td>
<td>Where did he die?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the text with words from the table in the correct form.

The **media** is TV, radio, newspapers, (1) ____________, and the internet. The media (2) ____________ on important (3) ____________ from around the world; for example, (4) ____________ like the Asian tsunami; or (5) ____________ between different countries. As well as reporting the news, the media give their (6) ____________ of events round the world. And reporters also like to write about (7) ____________ such as Tom Cruise and Angelina Jolie.

3 Cover the words and examples and look at the meanings. Say the words.
B Your media

Media questionnaire

1 Why do you read a newspaper?
   a to find out what has happened
   b because it has interesting articles
   c for the sports results
   d for the business news

2 What do you watch on TV?
   a the news
   b soaps
   c films
   d nothing much

3 What do you listen to on the radio?
   a the news
   b music programmes
   c the weather forecast
   d nothing much

4 Do you believe what you read or hear in the news?
   a yes, all of it
   b yes, most of it
   c yes, some of it
   d no, none of it

Glossary

newspaper e.g. The Times, Le Monde
find out get information or facts
happen take place, e.g. ‘We don’t know what will happen tomorrow.’
article a piece of writing in a paper or magazine
on TV on the radio see in TV/on the radio, but in the paper
the news a TV or radio programme about important things happening in the world
soap a story on TV two or three times a week about the lives and problems of a group of people
nothing much nothing important
programme a TV or radio show, e.g. the news
weather forecast a description of the weather for the next few days
believe think that something is true
all = 100%, most = 80–95%, some = 30–50%, none = 0%

spotlight watch, see, listen, hear
We watch TV, but we see or watch a programme.
We listen to the radio, but we hear or listen to a programme.

4 Circle the correct answer.
   See the film.
   1 Read an article on the paper.
   2 Let’s listen to the news.
   3 Watch a programme on TV.
   4 Find out what has happened.
   5 See the programme/article on TV.
   6 Did you read the sports results?
   7 I heard all on the radio.
   8 Don’t believe what you see.
   9 I watched most of it.

5 Complete the dialogues.
   I always read a paper at the weekend. ~ But do you read all of it?
   1 Did you watch TV last night? ~ Yes, I watched a programme about dogs.
   2 I read the story but I don’t believe it. It’s true. ~ No, it’s true.
   3 Have you heard the news? ~ No, it’s all false.
   4 Did you listen to the radio this morning? ~ Yes, I listened to the 8 o’clock news.
   5 What’s in the newspaper this morning? ~ I don’t know; I never buy one.
   6 Have you seen the weather forecast? ~ Yes, it’s going to rain.
   7 What did you watch on TV? ~ Oh, nothing.

6 ABOUT YOU Read the questionnaire again. Tick (√) your answers, or write a different answer. Ask another student the questions.
Review: Hobbies and interests

Unit 48

1 Write the phrases in the correct column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I really like it.</td>
<td>I really like it.</td>
<td>I think it’s quite boring.</td>
<td>It’s my favourite thing.</td>
<td>I think it’s fantastic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I love it.</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td>I quite enjoy it.</td>
<td>I’m not very interested in it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think it’s OK.</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td>I’m not very keen on it.</td>
<td>It’s quite enjoyable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I really hate it.</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td>I don’t like it very much.</td>
<td>It’s wonderful.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Circle the correct word.

1 What does your favourite actor do? (interest, interested)
2 Our teacher is very (keeping, keen on) classical music.
3 Do you enjoy (drive, driving)?
4 We prefer swimming to (that, that’s) running.
5 I think that film’s very (bored, boring).
6 Sue quite likes/dislikes (quite) studying English.

Unit 49

1 Look at the games in the box. Write the answers below.

| football | rugby | ice hockey | volleyball | tennis | basketball |

1 These games use a round ball: Football.
2 Players use their hands more than their feet in these games: Ice hockey.
3 These games have more than four players when they are playing: Volleyball.
4 This game uses: a) rackets (badminton), b) sticks (hockey).

2 Read Chelsea’s results for last year, and complete the sentences below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>played</th>
<th>won</th>
<th>drawn</th>
<th>lost</th>
<th>goals for</th>
<th>goals against</th>
<th>points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chelsea</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chelsea played 38 (1) games. They won 29, they (2) four, and they (3) five. They (4) 72 (5), and finished the season (6) of the league with 91 points.
Unit 50

1 Complete the dialogues.
   ▶ Does he like __________ ? — Yes, he’s always in the garden.
   1 What’s your __________ hobby? — I love camping. I __________ every year.
   2 Does she like cooking? — Yes, she __________ a lot of cooking.
   3 Does he have a hobby? — Yes, he __________ old cars and bikes.
   4 Do you play a musical __________ ? — No, I don’t.
   5 Do you listen to __________ music? — Yes, I do. I really like Mozart.
   6 Do you __________ a lot of travelling? — No. I prefer to __________ time with friends.

2 Complete answer ‘d’ in each question. Then choose the answers that are true for you or your country.
   1 I enjoy...
      a playing cards  b singing  c collecting things  d __________ time with friends
   2 My favourite activity of these is ...
      a travelling  b camping  c reading  d __________ to the gym
   3 I’m quite good at ...
      a swimming  b cooking  c drawing  d computer __________
   4 I would like to ...
      a paint well  b play the guitar  c sing well  d __________ the piano
      ... is popular in my country.
      a Table tennis  b Skilng  c Fishing  d Flower __________

Unit 51

1 Put the words from the circle into two groups. Give each group a title.

   ____________________  ____________________
   ____________________  ____________________
   ____________________  ____________________
   ____________________  ____________________
   ____________________  ____________________
   ____________________  ____________________
   ____________________  ____________________

2 Write a different name to complete each sentence.
   1 ____________________ is a famous opera singer in my country.
   2 ____________________ is lead singer with ____________________.
   3 ____________________ is a famous conductor.
   4 The ____________________ orchestra comes from my country.
   5 ____________________ is a great pianist.
   6 ____________________ by ____________________ is one of my favourite albums.
   7 ____________________ is number 1 in the charts at the moment.
   8 ____________________ is the drummer with ____________________.

REVIEW: HOBBIES AND INTERESTS 139
Unit 52

1. Complete the sentences.
   1. It's an action film and it's very exciting.
   2. It's a war film and it's very violent.
   3. It's a comedy and it's very funny.
   4. It's a history film and it's quite factual.
   5. It's a love story and it's very romantic.

2. Complete the conversation.
   A. There's a good film on at the Odeon cinema. It's called Brokeback Mountain.
   B. I've never heard of it. What's it (1) ?
   A. A relationship, a love relationship, between two cowboys.
   B. Oh. Who's (2) ?
   A. It's (3) Jake Gyllenhaal and Heath Ledger.
   B. Oh, I like Jake Gyllenhaal. He's a very good (4) .
   A. Yeah, and it's had great (5) in all the papers. The (6) is Ang Lee.
   B. He made Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon. Would you like to go and (7) it?

Unit 53

1. One word is missing in each line of the text. What is it, and where does it go?

   I usually (1) newspaper every day to find what has happened, but yesterday (2) the news in the car and then (3) dinner and watched it TV. As usual, most it was bad news: more than twenty people in a terrible road accident. After (4) the news, I watched an interesting about (5) television news who was in Thailand during the Tsunami in 2004.

2. Match 1 – 6 with a – f.
   1. an opinion
   2. a news report
   3. an event
   4. an advertisement
   5. the media
   6. celebrities

   a.
   1.
   2.
   3.
   4.
   5.
   6.
I can arrange a holiday

Things you might do or arrange before you go abroad on holiday:

• book the flight
• book the accommodation
• find your passport
• get a visa
• get travel insurance
• get foreign currency
• pack your suitcase
• hire a car

Glossary

arrange something plan and organize something
go abroad go to another country
on holiday if you are on holiday, you are not at work and you are away from home.
book arrange the plane ticket, e.g. buy it before you travel
flight a journey by plane
accommodation a place to stay, e.g. a hotel
find look and see where something is
passport
visa a document or note in your passport
which means you can travel to certain countries
travel insurance you pay a company for travel insurance so they will help you if you lose something or are ill on holiday
foreign of another country
currency the money of a country, e.g. $ (dollars) or € (euros)
pack put clothes in a suitcase
suitcase
hire pay to use something for a short time, e.g. a car, a bike

1 Circle the correct word.

I have to...find a visa.
1. We went abroad/holiday last summer.
2. I had to hire/arrange accommodation.
3. We might/have go to Japan in June.
4. I need to hire/get travel insurance.
5. Can we pack/hire a car here?
6. I must hire/find my passport.
7. Have you made/packed your suitcase?
8. Did you book/have the flight to Paris?

2 Complete the text.

I'm going on holiday for two weeks this Saturday. I wanted to go (1) ____________ this year, perhaps to the Far East, and I finally decided to go to China. I booked the (2) ____________ with China Airlines. I needed (3) ____________, too, so I looked on the Internet for hotels in Beijing. I found a nice one and (4) ____________ to stay there for the first week. I also had to (5) ____________ a visa, and I got some foreign (6) _____________. — Chinese Yuan. I paid €30 for travel (7) ____________; you never know, I (8) ____________ be ill or lose my things. Tomorrow, I'm going to (9) ____________ my suitcase. I know I put my passport somewhere, but where? I'll have to (10) ____________ it before Saturday!

3 Test yourself. Cover the list of things you might do before you go abroad.
Can you remember the phrases and write your own list?
55 I can book a hotel room

A Describing a hotel

travelog.com

Atlanta Hotel (Vilnius, Lithuania)

We stayed in this hotel near the Old Town where we had a beautiful bedroom with good facilities: minibar, internet access, satellite TV and air conditioning. The hotel has a great gym. There was 24-hour room service and the staff were very helpful with tourist information. The café bar was a very pleasant place to meet other guests, and we had a delicious breakfast there too. We recommend both Vilnius and the Atlanta for a short stay.

Glossary

stay in a hotel live for a short time in a hotel (also a stay)
facilities things you can use, e.g. internet, gym air conditioning makes a room colder; central heating makes a room warmer
room service when a waiter brings food or drinks to your room
staff people who work for a company
helpful wanting to help
tourist someone who goes to a place on holiday
guest a person staying in a hotel or your home
delicious very good to eat
recommend say something is good

1 Circle the right answer.

1 The bar was ____________ .
   - pleasant
   - delicious
   - both
2 The staff/guests work in the hotel.
3 It was a lovely hotel so I recommend/didn’t recommend it to my sister.
4 A lot of tourists/guests visit our city.
5 Internet access and satellite TV are room service/facilities.
6 You can get drinks from the gym/minibar.

2 Complete the questions.

1 How long did you ____________ there?
2 Were the ____________ helpful?
3 Did the room have good ____________ , e.g. internet access?
4 Did it have a ____________ with drinks in your room?
5 Did it have ____________ TV?
6 Did it have air ____________ and central ____________ ?
7 Did you talk to other ____________ in the hotel?
8 Would you ____________ this hotel to other people?

3 Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.
B Booking a room

Katie (K) is talking to the receptionist (R) at a hotel.
R Hotel Metropole. Can I help you?
K Oh, good morning. I'd like to book a double room with a bathroom for May 24th, please.
R That's fine. All our bedrooms are en suite.
K Right, and how much is that?
R It's £60 a night, and breakfast is included in the price.
K That's great. And has the hotel got parking?
R No, I'm afraid not.
K Oh, what a shame. OK, well, never mind, I'll take it.
R Right, can I have your credit card details please?

4 Answer the questions about the dialogue.

- Is Katja staying for two nights?
- Does she want a room for one person?
- Has the room got a bathroom?
- Is she happy about the price?
- Will she pay more for breakfast?
- How much is the room for one night?
- Can she leave her car at the hotel?
- Is she angry about the parking?
- Do they want her credit card number?

5 Complete the dialogue.

- A Regent Hotel, can I help you?
- Oh, hello, I'd like (1) ____________ to (2) ____________ a room for two next Tuesday, please.
- Is that a (3) ____________ room or a (4) ____________ ?
- A double, please.
- All our rooms are (5) ____________, with bath or (6) ____________
- That's (7) _____________. How much is the room?
- It's £45 (8) ____________ night, and breakfast is (9) ____________
- OK, and does the room have (10) ____________ conditioning?
- I'm (11) ____________ not.
- That's a (12) _____________. Oh, well, never (13) ____________, I'll take the room.
- (14) ____________, could you give me your credit card (15) ____________, please?
I can communicate in an airport

A  Check-in

When passengers get to the airport, they put their luggage (suitcase and bag) on a trolley and go to the check-in desk. There, they show their ticket and passport, and put their luggage on the scales. They can take hand luggage on the plane with them. The person at the check-in desk often asks, ‘Do you want a window seat or an aisle seat?’ They give the passenger a boarding card, and they often say, ‘Have a good flight.’

1. Complete the words.
   1. passenger
   2. hand luggage
   3. check-in desk
   4. ticket
   5. scales
   6. seat
   7. boarding card
   8. window seat
   9. aisle seat
   10. have a good flight

2. Test yourself. Cover the text. Name the things in the picture.

B  Departures

Departures from Bristol Airport

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flight</th>
<th>Destination</th>
<th>Departure time</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ezy 6025</td>
<td>Barcelona</td>
<td>10.25</td>
<td>departed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kl 1048</td>
<td>Amsterdam</td>
<td>10.35</td>
<td>flight closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ba 4021</td>
<td>Munich</td>
<td>10.50</td>
<td>last call gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fr 403</td>
<td>Dublin</td>
<td>11.00</td>
<td>boarding gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ba 7649</td>
<td>Milan</td>
<td>11.05</td>
<td>delayed until</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ba 4034</td>
<td>Paris CDG</td>
<td>11.35</td>
<td>check-in desk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Look at the departures board. It is now 10.30. Circle the correct answer.
   1. Can you get on the Dublin flight now? Yes/No
   2. Can you get on the Barcelona flight now? Yes/No
   3. Can you get on the Amsterdam flight now? Yes/No
   4. Can you get on the Munich flight now? Yes/No
   5. Is the Milan flight on time? Yes/No
   6. How many flights are boarding now? 1/2/3/4/5

Glossary

departed: a plane has departed, it has left the airport. (The noun is departure.)
flight closed: You can’t get on the plane now.
last call: You must get on the plane now.
gate: the place where you leave the airport building to get on the plane.
boarding: If the flight is boarding, people are getting on the plane.
delayed: If a plane is delayed, it is going to be late. (It isn’t on time.)
Complete the airport announcements.

Flight KL 1048 to Amsterdam is now closed.

1. This is the last opportunity for passengers on flight BA 4021 to Munich. Please go to gate 5 immediately.
2. Passengers on flight FR 483 to Dublin: this flight is now scheduled at gate 7.
3. We are very sorry that flight BA 7643 to Milan is delayed.
4. Would passengers on flight BA 4084 to Paris please go to desk 22.
5. Flight BA 7643 to Milan will now depart at 11:50.

Take-off and landing

You get on the plane and fasten your seat belt.

The plane takes off.

The plane lands and you get off.

You go through passport control. Someone checks your passport.

You collect your luggage from luggage reclaim.

You go through customs and leave the terminal.

Put the phrases in order. Write numbers in the boxes.

a. collect your luggage
d. the plane lands
g. get on the plane
b. go through customs
e. get off the plane
h. the plane takes off
c. fasten your seat belt
f. leave the terminal
i. someone checks your passport

Complete the phrases.

You leave the terminal.

1. The plane takes off and
2. You fasten
3. You go through and
4. You collect your from
5. Passengers and

ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

1. How often do you travel by plane?
2. What do you do in the airport when your flight is delayed?
3. Do you like to sit in a window seat or an aisle seat?
4. What hand luggage do you usually take on the plane?

Test yourself. Cover the words. Can you remember the phrases for each picture?
We spent ten days in Hyères, a holiday resort in the south of France. We flew to Nice, then got a bus to Hyères. We rented an apartment near the beach, and that's where we spent most mornings. I was happy to lie on the beach and sunbathe in my new swimming costume: my husband preferred a T-shirt and long shorts! He went swimming a lot -- the sea was lovely and warm. We had lunch in the apartment, then relaxed for an hour or so. In the late afternoon we usually went for a walk, and in the evening, had dinner in one of the restaurants near the beach. It was a perfect holiday.

Glossary
resort a place where a lot of people go for a holiday
flew travel by plane
get a bus travel by bus (also take a bus)
rent an apartment, house, etc. pay to use an apartment, house, etc.
apartment rooms you rent for a holiday (also flat)
ilie v. lie the woman in the picture is lying on the beach
sunbathe take off your clothes and sit or lie in the sun
relax do nothing and enjoy yourself
an hour or so about an hour
go for a walk have a short walk to enjoy yourself
perfect If something is perfect it can't be better.

1 Write the words for the meanings.
   ► A place where people go for a holiday. resort.
   1 Pay money to use a house for a period of time. r.
   2 Women often wear one on the beach. s.
   3 Men often wear these on the beach. s.
   4 Rooms you rent for a holiday. a.
   5 You can swim in this, and it's not a pool. s.
   6 Very good; cannot be better. p.
   7 Do nothing and enjoy yourself. r.
   8 Lie in the sun in a swimming costume or shorts. s.

2 Complete the sentences.
   ► I went for a swim in the sea.
   1 We sat on the sand and looked at the sea.
   2 We took a bus to the mountains, and then for a walk.
   3 We stayed in an apartment in a small holiday near Malaga.
   4 It takes an hour or to get to the beach.
   5 We spent two days near Paris, then from Charles de Gaulle Airport to New York.
   6 I want to relax, so I'm just going to on the beach and sunbathe.

3 Test yourself. Cover the text and name 1 – 4 in the picture.

HOLIDAYS
### I can describe a sightseeing holiday

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>map</td>
<td>You can get a map in Tourist Information.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guidebook</td>
<td>Our guide was very good. A guidebook is useful.</td>
<td>A person (guide) or book (guidebook) which describes a place for tourists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typical</td>
<td>Look – a typical tourist, with a guidebook and camera.</td>
<td>A typical thing is a good example of its kind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go sightseeing</td>
<td>We went sightseeing yesterday.</td>
<td>go as a tourist to look at interesting buildings and places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>art gallery</td>
<td>I’m going to an art gallery this afternoon.</td>
<td>a place where people can look at paintings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visit museums or art galleries etc.</td>
<td>You should visit the British Museum in London.</td>
<td>visit go and see a place for a short time museum a place where you look at old or interesting things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look round</td>
<td>I want to look round the town.</td>
<td>walk round a place to see it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on a (guided) tour</td>
<td>We went on a tour of the old town.</td>
<td>a short visit to a town, museum, etc. sometimes with a guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get lost</td>
<td>I got lost so I asked for help.</td>
<td>If you get lost or are lost, you don’t know where you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take photos</td>
<td>I took lots of photos.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1. Circle the correct word.**

1. art museum gallery  
2. go/see sightseeing  
3. guide map/book  
4. make/take photos  
5. guide/guided tour  
6. go on/make a tour  

**Spotlight: should + verb**

*You should* go to that museum: *It is a good idea to go to that museum.* Should is the same in all forms.

*If you go to Peru, you should* visit Machu Picchu. *It’s fantastic.*

**2. Complete the sentences.**

1. She _________ a lot of photos of some _________ old French villages.
2. You _________ and looked _________ the museum – they’re very interesting.
3. I _________ lost because I didn’t have a _________.
4. We went to the _________ gallery to see those Picasso paintings.
5. We _________ on a tour of the centre and the _________ was interesting and funny.

**3. ABOUT YOU**

Write your answers or ask another student.

When you visit new towns/cities, do you:

1. go sightseeing? _________  
2. take a map with you? _________  
3. buy a guidebook? _________  
4. take photos? _________  
5. visit museums and art galleries? _________  
6. look round the shops? _________  
7. often get lost? _________  
8. go on a guided tour? _________
### A. At the bank

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can I use this card in this <strong>cash machine</strong>?</td>
<td>If it’s a Visa card, yes.</td>
<td>also ATM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where can I <strong>change</strong> dollars into euros?</td>
<td>In a bank, a hotel, or a bureau de change.</td>
<td><strong>change</strong> (money) e.g. give someone dollars and get the same in euros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there a <strong>bureau de change</strong> near here?</td>
<td>Yes, there’s one at the station.</td>
<td>an office where you can change money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which currency do I need for Argentina?</td>
<td>You need pesos.</td>
<td>the money that a country uses, e.g. dollars in the USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ve got Japanese yen. What’s the <strong>exchange rate</strong> for the euro?</td>
<td>It’s 142 yen to the euro.</td>
<td><strong>exchange rate</strong> how much money from one country you can buy with money from another country, e.g. US$10 = €12.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where do I sign this?</td>
<td>Just here.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **What commission** do you charge? | We charge 1% (\% = per cent) | **commission** the money you pay a bank, e.g. for changing currency |

**Match 1 – 5 with a – f to make questions.**

1. Where can I change my euros?  
2. What currency do I need?  
3. Can I use this card?  
4. What’s the exchange rate?  
5. Is there a bureau de change?  

   a. for Brazil?  
   b. for the peso?  
   c. do you charge?  
   d. in this cash machine?  
   e. in the station?  
   f. into dollars?  

**Complete the sentences.**

1. **The banks** **charge** 1.5% commission.  
2. **Change** dollars into euros.  
3. The **yuan** in China is the yuan.  
4. What’s the exchange **rate**?  
5. You pay one **cent** to the bank.  
6. You get money from a **machine**.

**ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY** Write your answers or ask another student.

1. What’s the currency in your country?  
2. Do you know the exchange rate for the US dollar?  
3. When you travel, where do you get or change money?  
4. Do you use a cash machine to get your own currency?  
5. Where do you find cash machines in your country?
**B At the post office**

1. You want to **send a letter to a friend.**
   - **You write** the name, address and postcode on the envelope.
   - **You put a stamp** on it.
   - **You post it in the letter box or postbox.**
   - **The postman or postwoman delivers** it in the next day or two.

2. You want to **send a parcel to Germany.**
   - You take it to the **post office.**
   - "How much is this parcel to Germany, please?"
   - "Put it on the scales, please. 350 gms – that’s £3.43."
   - "That’s fine. And can I have two stamps for *postcards* to Germany?"

4. **Answer the questions. Choose answers from the box.**
   - Where do you post letters? *In a postbox, in a letter box*
   - 1. What do postmen do? __________________________
   - 2. What do you write on an envelope? __________________________
   - 3. Where do you take a parcel? __________________________
   - 4. Where do you put the parcel? __________________________
   - 5. What do you put on an envelope/parcel? __________________________
   - 6. Who takes parcels to people’s homes? __________________________
   - 7. Which three things can you send? __________________________

5. **Use the words to make questions. You need to add one more word.**
   - please / Japan / to / parcel / is / how / this / ?
   - Argentinia / / for / three / can / stamps / ?
   - letter / where / post / this / ?
   - Russia / / is / postcard / how / a / ?
   - post / buy / envelopes / you / can / the / at / ?

6. **Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the texts. Can you remember the sentences?**
Review: Holidays

Unit 54

Read the text on the right.
Find words in the text to match the meanings.

- of another country which is not your country ______________
- plan or organize ______________
- money that a country uses ______________
- pay to use something for a short time ______________
- go to another country ______________
- a time when you don’t have to work ______________
- arrange and pay for something in advance ______________
- put your things in a bag before you travel ______________
- a journey by plane ______________
- a place to stay, e.g. a hotel ______________

When you go abroad on holiday, you might need to arrange certain things. Firstly, you will probably need to book a flight and your accommodation. For some countries, you will need to take or send your passport to the embassy of that country to get a visa, and you might also need foreign currency. Some travellers like to hire a car before they go, and then get it at the airport. And when you pack your suitcase, don’t forget your passport!

Unit 55

1 Match 1 – 10 with a – k.

- double ______________   - I’m afraid ______________   - a conditioning ______________   - g TV
- central ______________   - 7 never ______________   - b a shame ______________   - h heating
- air ______________   - 8 book ______________   - c in the price ______________   - i mind
- internet ______________   - 9 what ______________   - d access ______________   - j service
- room ______________   - 10 included ______________   - e room ______________   - k a room
- satellite ______________   - f not

2 Complete the conversation.

- A Can you ______________ a good hotel in New York?
- B Yes, we (1) ______________ in a great hotel last year – the Excelsior.
- A Did all the rooms have a bathroom?
- B Yes, they were all (2) ______________.
- A And did it have a minibar, and TV and everything?
- B Yes, the room (3) ______________ were great. And the hotel (4) ______________ were really friendly and helpful too.
- A How about the food?
- B It was really good – in fact, it was (5) ______________. And the hotel wasn’t too expensive – it was about $50 a (6) ______________.
- A That’s good, isn’t it? And has it got (7) ______________?
- B I don’t know. We didn’t have a car.
- A It sounds perfect. I think I’ll (8) ______________ a room, then.
Unit 56

1 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.

1 depatures  
2 check-in  
3 last  
4 passport  
5 seat  
6 hand  
7 aisle  
8 boarding  
9 flight  
10 luggage  
11 belt  
12 closed  
13 desk  
14 seven  
15 board

2 Complete the sentences with one word. Use the Past Simple in questions 6 – 10.

1 I couldn’t carry my suitcases, so I put them on a ________.
2 I had to show my passport and ____________ at the check-in desk.
3 I put my luggage on the ____________ and it was 25 kilos.
4 The check-in person said, “Have a good ____________.”
5 I was an hour late because my flight was ____________.
6 When I ____________ on the plane, somebody was in my seat.
7 I ____________ my seat belt and started reading the in-flight magazine.
8 It was sunny when we took off, but it was raining when the plane ____________ at Manchester Airport.
9 After we got off the plane, we went and ____________ our luggage.
10 When I ____________ through customs, there was nobody there.

Unit 57

One word is missing in each line of the text. Where from? Write a word from the box at the end.

sunbathed went get perfect holiday ✓ or flew rented resort

We had a lovely/in France last year. We to Marseille Airport and then we had to a bus to Cassis, which is a very nice holiday by the sea. We an apartment in the centre of the town. Every morning we for a walk round the town, then we on the beach for an hour so. The weather was for the whole week.
Unit 58

Correct one mistake in each sentence.
1 She went on a guiding tour of the city. She went on a guided tour of the city.
2 We're going in a tour of the city this afternoon. We're going on a tour of the city.
3 Did you go seeing in Paris? Did you go seeing in Paris?
4 She made a lot of photos on her holiday. She made a lot of photos on her holiday.
5 There was lots of typic tourists. There were lots of typical tourists.
6 There's a good exhibition at the art museum. There's a good exhibition at the art museum.
7 Have you got a guided book about London, please? Have you got a guided book about London, please?

Unit 59

1 Write words beginning with P and C.
   a letter = put a letter in a letter box
1 p__________ = where you buy stamps
2 p__________ = the numbers and letters at the end of an address
3 p__________ = the person who delivers the letters
4 p__________ = letter box
5 p__________ = you write these on holiday
6 p__________ = you put a stamp on an envelope
7 p__________ = %
8 p__________ = you take this to the post office because it's too big for a letter box
9 c__________ = the money of a country, e.g. dollars, euros
10 c__________ = a place inside or outside a bank where you can get money with a card
11 c__________ = e.g. give someone dollars and they give you the same amount in pesos
12 c__________ = you have to pay this to a bank for changing money
13 c__________ = a bank can change 1% for changing money

2 Complete the questions.
   Can I have five _______ for postcards to Russia, please?
1 How much is it to _______ a 1 kg parcel to Italy?
2 Did you put a stamp on the _______?
3 How many letters did the postman _______ today?
4 What's the _______ for the Brazilian Real?
5 Can I change dollars _______ pounds sterling here?
6 Is there a _______ de _______ in the centre?
A Introductions

Sam and Mary meet for the first time ...

JANE Sam, this is Mary.
MARY Hello.
SAM Hi. Nice to meet you.

two hours later ...

MARY Well, goodbye, Sam. Good to meet you.
SAM Yes. I hope to see you again. Bye!

Glossary

bye a short form of goodbye
shake hands

Make sentences from the words.

1. you / do / how / do / ? H ow d o y o u d o ?
2. meet / nice / hello / you / to
3. this / Max / Hanna / is
4. again / hope / you / bye / to / I / see
5. you / goodbye / to / nice / meet

Complete the dialogues.

1. Lucia Emma, this is Alex.
Alex Hi, Emma. to meet you.
Emma
2. Alex Goodbye, Emma. I to see you.
Emma Yes.
3. Chris Jan, this is Dan.
Jan , Dan. Good to see you.
Dan Jan.
Jan
B Meeting a friend

Tess (T) meets her friend Matt (M) in a bar.
T Hi, Matt. How are you?
M Fine, thanks. And you?
T Yes, not bad.
M Good. And how’s Sarah?
T Yeah, she’s very well.

An hour later they say ‘goodbye’.
M OK. I’ve got to go now. See you later.
T Sure. About 7 o’clock?
M Yeah, that’s fine.
T Good. See you then.
M OK. Bye.

3 Complete the phrases.
1 How are you? I’m ______.
2 I’m not ______.
3 How’s your wife? ______.
4 How’s she ______.
5 ______ are you? I’m ______.
6 How’s your ______? ______?
7 How’s your ______? ______?
8 I’ve got to ______. Go ______.
9 ______ to you. ______.

4 Cover the conversations above and complete the dialogues. Don’t use the same word more than once.
1 Jim Hi, How are you? I’m ______. And you?
Sam I’m ______. And ______ your wife?
Jim Yeah, not ______. And ______
Sam She’s ______.

5 Test yourself. Cover the table above and answer the questions.

What do you say when you:
see someone anytime?
see someone before lunch?
see someone after 6.00 p.m.?
see someone after lunch?
say goodbye at 11.00 p.m.?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>phrases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>before lunch</td>
<td>before lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after lunch</td>
<td>after 6 p.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anytime</td>
<td>anytime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at the end of the evening</td>
<td>at the end of the evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morning</td>
<td>good morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afternoon</td>
<td>good afternoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evening</td>
<td>good evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goodbye</td>
<td>goodbye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goodnight</td>
<td>goodnight</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glossary

how are you? You say this to a friend when you meet. (also how are things?)
fine or very well or not bad are common replies to ‘How are you?’ not very fine
have got to do = have to do or must do (have got to is more informal)

Spotlight See you...

We say this when we know we will meet someone again.
See you ______.
See you ______ = at the time we agreed
See you ______ = the same day
See you ______ = another day, e.g. next week
See you ______ = another time, but I’m not sure when

C Saying hello and goodbye

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>more informal</th>
<th>goodbye</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>morning</td>
<td>afternoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hi or hi there</td>
<td>morning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Test yourself. Cover the table above and answer the questions.

What do you say when you:
see someone anytime?
see someone before lunch?
see someone after 6.00 p.m.?
see someone after lunch?
say goodbye at 11.00 p.m.?
### I can use special greetings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Say this to someone when:</th>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you say goodbye</td>
<td>have a nice day/evening</td>
<td>thanks, you too and you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>someone is going to bed</td>
<td>have a good/lovely weekend</td>
<td>goodnight, sleep well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it's Christmas/new year/Easter (Easter is a Christian festival in March or April)</td>
<td>happy/merry Christmas happy New Year happy Easter</td>
<td>happy Christmas, etc. the same to you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it's their birthday</td>
<td>happy birthday</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they've done something well or passed an exam</td>
<td>well done congratulations</td>
<td>thank you thanks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are getting married or having a baby</td>
<td>congratulations not well-done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are going to do something difficult, e.g. before an exam</td>
<td>good luck not good lucky</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are going away, e.g. on holiday</td>
<td>have a good/nice holiday/time have a good journey</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>someone has arrived recently, or returned home after a long time</td>
<td>welcome to London welcome home/back</td>
<td>cheers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Match 1 – 9 with a – j.

1. Merry Christmas! b
2. I'm going to New York. a
3. Cheers! c
4. Goodnight. d
5. Hello! I'm back! e
6. I'm 21 today. f
7. It's my driving test today. g
8. Bob and I are getting married. h
9. I've passed my driving test. i
10. Have a nice evening. j

### Complete the phrases.

1. Have a nice/good day/evening/w. ______ /
2. Happy ______/E N Y ______ /
3. Goodnight/A Good l. ______/W ______ home!

### Test yourself. Look at column one in the table and cover columns two and three. Can you remember the phrases and responses?

*cheers* has two other meanings in informal, spoken English.
1. Thank you
   Here's the money you lent me. ~ Oh, *cheers.*
2. Goodbye
   See you later. ~ *Cheers.*
62 I can ask for information

A About people

Who do you live with, Tracey?
And what's your brother like?
And your boyfriend – what does he do?
How long have you known him?
I understand you're learning Spanish.
What are the classes?
And why?
Whose idea was it to live in Spain?
What's wrong with England?
How about you? What do you think?
What kind of work can you do in Spain?

- My parents, and my younger brother.
- He's stupid – and a bit fat.
- He works for an airline company.
- About two years.
- Yes, that's right.
- Twice a week.
- Because we want to live in Spain.
- My boyfriend's.
- He doesn't like the weather.
- Yeah, I think it's a good idea.
- My boyfriend can still work for his company,
and I can get a job in a bar.

Glossary

What's wrong with England?
What's the problem with England?

1 Make questions from the words.

- for / do / work / who / you / ?
- like / what / music / do / kind of / you / ?
- he / does / what / do ?
- have / lived / how long / there / you / ?
- wrong / Peter / with / what's / ?
- this / to / belong / does / who / ?
- his / like / what's / flat / ?
- like / you / why / her / don't / ?
- who do you work for?

2 Find the right question in Exercise 1 for these answers.

- Because she's horrible to me.

a) Ten years.
b) He's very angry with me.
c) It's small but very nice.
d) Twice a year.
e) It's mine.
f) He's a doctor.
g) Rock and pop.

3 Complete the dialogues.

- What kind of animal is it?
  - I think it's a horse.
  1 How _______ do you go? – Every week.
  2 _______ jacket is this? – It’s mine.
  3 _______ she like? – She’s very nice.
  4 I don't speak German. _______ about you?
  5 How _______ have you worked there?
  6 _______ does this belong to?
  - I'm not sure. I think it's Mark's.
B About places

What do you recommend? (= What do you think is good?)
How long is it open? (= How many hours?)
How far is it to the river? (= How many metres?)
How many places can we visit with this ticket?
Is the castle worth seeing? (= Do you recommend the castle?)
What time/When does the palace close/shut? (see open)

Where's the nearest bank? (= Where's the first bank from here?)

4 Circle the correct answers.

- How far/long is it to the museum?
  1. Which/What is your address?
  2. How long/long time do you need?
  3. What hour/time does it open?
  4. How much/many places did you visit?
  5. Where's the nearest/next cafe?
  6. Is the museum worth to see/seeing?

5 Complete the questions.

- When _________ does the post office open?
  1. How ___________ is it to the station?
  2. How ___________ places did you go to?
  3. There are two, ___________ do you want?
  4. ___________ 's the phone number of the bank?
  5. It opens at 8.00, but when does it ___________?
  6. Is it ___________ going to see Notre Dame?
  7. Where's the ___________ underground station?
  8. There's a lot to see. What do you ___________?

6 ABOUT YOUR TOWN Answer the questions or ask another student.

- 1. Where do you live?
- 2. How long have you lived there?
- 3. Which places are worth visiting?
- 4. How far are they from your home?
- 5. Can you recommend any restaurants?

SOCIAL ENGLISH 157
63 I can ask for things

A Requests and responses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requests (in the classroom)</th>
<th>Responses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can you bring the dictionaries here, please?</td>
<td>✓ Sure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could you finish this exercise for homework, please?</td>
<td>✓ OK.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuri, could you possibly take these books to the staffroom?</td>
<td>✓ Yeah, sure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elena, can you change places with Gabi?</td>
<td>✓ Yeah, no problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could you lend me a pen, Boris?</td>
<td>Yes, of course.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dmitri, could you possibly wait here a few minutes?</td>
<td>✓ (No), I'm afraid I can't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glossary

- bring
- take
- finish something - do or complete the last part of something
- change places - e.g. Elena sits in Gabi's place and Gabi sits in Elena's place
- lend - give something to someone for use for a short time
- wait - stay in one place for a short time until something happens
- I'm afraid I can't = I'm sorry, but I can't say I'm afraid but I can't.

spotlight Being polite

- Can and could have the same meaning in the table.
- Could you possibly ... is more polite, for a bigger request.
- Please is very common, and makes a request more polite.
- I'm afraid ... is used to say politely that you are sorry about something.

1. Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.

   - Can you        clean the        board?
   - Can you        lend a pen? - Yes,         course.
   - Could you        wait here a few        ? - I'm         I can't.
   - Lia, can you        places        Maris,        ? - Yeah,        .

2. Use the words to write requests and responses. Use can, could and could ... possibly and different responses.

   - take / books / away
     A. Could you take these books away, please?
     B. Yes, sure.
   - finish / exercise / homework
     A. ✔
     B. ✔
   - Luca / change places / Maria
     A. ✔
     B. ✔

3. bring / notebook / tomorrow
   A. ✔
   B. ✔

4. lend / pencil
   A. ✔
   B. ✔

5. wait / classroom a few minutes
   A. ✔
   B. ✔

158 SOCIAL ENGLISH
B Asking for and giving permission

Could you lend me your dictionary?
Sure.

Is it all right if I sit in that chair?
Yes, that's fine.

Do you mind if I look at your answers?
No, go ahead.

Could I borrow your pen?
I'm afraid I need it.

Is it OK if I close the door?
Yes, sure.

Can I open the window?
Sure, go ahead.

Glossary

go ahead or that's fine You say go ahead or that's fine when you give someone permission to do something.

all right = OK

Do you mind if ...? = Is it a problem for you if ...?
(The answer 'No, go ahead' means 'It's not a problem'.)

spotlight lend and borrow

If you borrow a pen from someone, you use their pen, then give it back.
If you lend someone a pen, you give them your pen to use for a short time.

Could I borrow your pen? = Could you lend me your pen?

3 Write new sentences. Change the bold words. The meaning must be the same.

► Can we sit down? Is it OK if we sit down?
1 Is it OK if I use this dictionary?
2 Is it OK if I make a coffee?
3 Can I stay for another ten minutes?
4 Is it OK to close the window?
5 Can you lend me your book?
6 Can I sit here? = Yes, of course.
7 Can I use the computer? = I'm sorry but I need it.
8 Is it OK to have my coffee here? = Yes, sure.

4 Ask for permission. Use different words in each sentence.

► You want to sit near the window. Can I sit near the window?
1 You want to go at one o'clock today.
2 You want to borrow a rubber.
3 You want to go to the toilet.
4 You want to sit in a different seat.

5 Test yourself. Write five more ways to give permission from this unit.

Yes, sure.
1 ________________ 3 ________________
2 ________________ 4 ________________
5 ________________

SOCIAL ENGLISH 159
Inviting

Would you like to...
Do you want to...
...go out for a meal/a drink?
...come round for a coffee?
...come to a party?

Saying yes

Yes, great!
Yes, I'd love to!
That sounds lovely/fun/good.
That would be lovely/nice.

Saying no

I'm afraid I can't.
I'm sorry, but I'm busy.
I'd love to, but I'm going to the cinema.

spotlight Would you like to... or Do you want to...?

Would you like to...? is a little more polite than Do you want to...?

1. A word is missing. Where from?
   Write it at the end.
   ▶ How/next? about
   1. Would you like to come round later? ____________
   2. Yes, I'd love. ____________
   3. Do you want to out for dinner? ____________
   4. That lovely. ____________
   5. I'm afraid can't. ____________
   6. That be nice. ____________
   7. Do you want come to a party? ____________
   8. I'm, but I'm busy tonight. ____________

2. Complete the questions and answers.
   ▶ Invite someone for a drink in a bar.
   Say yes.
   1. Invite a friend for a meal in a restaurant.
      Say yes.
   2. Invite a friend to your home for a coffee.
      Say no politely.
   3. Invite someone to a party tomorrow.
      Say yes.
   4. Invite someone for a coffee in a café.
      Say no politely.

A Do you want to go out for a drink?
B That would be lovely.
A Would you like to come around?
B Yes, great.
A Do you want to out for dinner?
B That would be lovely.
A I'm afraid I can't.
B That's a pity.
A Do you want to come to a party?
B I'd love to, but I'm going to the cinema.

Glossary

invite ask someone to come to a party, your house, etc.
go out for a meal or a drink means 'go to a restaurant or a café/bar'
come round come to my home
party a time when friends meet to eat, drink, dance, play games, etc.
great very good you wonderful
I'd love to = I want to do it very much
I'd = I would
That sounds lovely = I think that's a lovely idea.
That would be lovely = I would like to do it.
busy if you are busy, you have a lot of things to do.
I'm afraid I can't = I'm sorry, (but) I can't see I'm afraid but I can't

A Do you want to go out for a drink?
B That would be lovely.
A Would you like to come around?
B Yes, great.
A Do you want to out for dinner?
B That would be lovely.
A I'm afraid I can't.
B That's a pity.
A Do you want to come to a party?
B I'd love to, but I'm going to the cinema.
65. I can make suggestions

**Ask for a suggestion**
What shall we do this weekend?

**Make a suggestion**
Shall we go to the beach? Maybe we could go out for a meal.

**What about going**
to an exhibition? Let's go out for a drink.

Say 'yes'
Yes, (that's a) good/great idea! Yeah, let's do that. OK, fine.

Say 'no', or make another suggestion
I'm not sure (about that). Well, I'd prefer to stay at home. Hmm... or perhaps we could go to the mountains.

1. Put the dialogue in order.
   I'd prefer to get them at the station. The weather's nice, so Yes, good idea. What shall we do this weekend? Maybe we could take the train. Fine. Shall we get the tickets online? what about going to the beach?

2. Correct the mistakes.
   - We could have a party this weekend. We could have a party this weekend.
   1. What do we do this evening? ____________________________________________________________________________
   2. Do you have a suggestion? ____________________________________________________________________________
   3. What about going to see a film? ____________________________________________________________________________
   4. I'd prefer go by train. ____________________________________________________________________________
   5. Yes, that a good idea. ____________________________________________________________________________

3. Write in a word where there is a /.
   A: I'm / sure / that ____________________________________________________________________________
   2. A: What / we / on / Saturday? ____________________________________________________________________________
   B: Perhaps we / go / out / for / a / meal ____________________________________________________________________________
   A: OK, let's / that ____________________________________________________________________________
   3. A: Where / we / go / afternoon? ____________________________________________________________________________
   B: /'s / go / to / an / exhibition. ____________________________________________________________________________
   A: Yeah / 's / a / good / ____________________________________________________________________________

**Glossary**
suggestion an idea that someone gives you to think about
maybe/perhaps possibly
What about ...? = What do you think about ...?

**Spotlight**
Saying no
It isn't very polite to say no to a suggestion in English. It's more polite to say, I'm not sure, or make another suggestion.
Shall we go out? - Well, I'd prefer to stay in.
I can offer, accept, and refuse

A Offering food, drink or help

Offering food/drink
Would you like a biscuit?
Do you want something to eat?

Offering help
Can I give you a hand?
Do you need some help?

Accept = say yes  Refuse = say no
Yes, please.  No, thanks.
Thanks.
Thanks. Could I have...

Spotlight Saying thank you
Thanks or Thanks a lot are the most common ways of thanking someone in spoken English. Thank you (very much) is more formal.

1 Correct one letter of one word in each sentence.

1. Could you like something to drink? Would
2. Can I give you a hand? ____________ ~ No, don't lory. ____________
3. Do you want something to eat? ____________ ~ Thanks. Would I have a biscuit? ____________
4. So you need some help? ____________ ~ No, I'm mine, thanks. ____________
5. Would you like a drink? ____________ ~ Thinks. Could I have a coffee? ____________

2 One word or contraction is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.

1. No, worry... ____________
2. Can I give you hand? ____________
3. Thank you much. ____________
4. Would you a drink? ____________
5. Thanks lot. ____________
6. No, fine, thanks. ____________

3 Complete the questions and answers.

Offer someone food.
1. Offer someone a drink.
Accept, and ask for some water.
2. Offer someone help.
Say no politely.
3. Offer someone food.
Accept, and ask for an apple.
4. Offer someone help.
Say no.

Do you want something to eat?
A. Would ____________ a drink?
B. Yes, __________________ water?
A. Do ____________ help?
B. No, __________________ thanks.
A. Would ____________ eat?
B. Yes, __________________ an apple?
A. Can ____________ hand?
B. No, __________________ worry.
B Offering to do something

Would you like me to make the dinner? ~ That's very kind of you.

Shall I carry your bag? ~ OK. Thanks.

Do you want me to answer that? ~ Yes, please.

Let me pay for the drinks. ~ That's very kind of you.

spotlight: let me + verb

We use let me + verb when we really want to do something for someone.

Let me pay for lunch. Let me get the train tickets.
Let me give you a lift to the station. ~ Let me take you in my car.

4 Match 1 – 6 with a – g.

I'm really hungry. _______ a Let me carry it for you.
1 I haven't got much money. _______ b Do you want me to ring the doctor?
2 Are the dishes dirty? _______ c Shall I make you a sandwich? ✓
3 I have to go to the airport. _______ d That's OK. Let me pay for the meal.
4 This suitcase is really heavy. _______ e Yes. Would you like me to wash up?
5 Is that someone at the door? _______ f Let me give you a lift.
6 I don't feel very well. _______ g Yes. Shall I see who it is?

5 Circle the correct word.

She/It/Let me answer the door.
1 That's very kind of you.
2 Let/She/It me get the shopping.
3 Let/She/It I answer the phone?
4 Would/Do you like me to help?
5 Shall/It/I'll carry that for you?
6 Shall I give/take you a lift to work?
7 Let/me/I do the washing-up.
8 Do you like/want me to make the breakfast?

6 Complete the conversations. Write one word or contraction (e.g. it's, I'll) in each gap.

1 A I'm just going to the post office.
   B Well, let _______ me give _______ a _______.
2 A I'm really tired!
   B OK, _______ me _______ the dinner for you?
      A Yes, _______. And then let _______ do the washing-up afterwards.
3 A Jeannie, that shopping looks really heavy. Let _______ _______ it for you.
   B Oh, _______ very much.
4 A Oh, no! That's the phone again!
   B Do you _______ _______ me to answer it?
**I can say sorry and respond**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Saying sorry/apologizing</th>
<th>Responses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sorry, I don't speak English very well. I'm sorry. I've broken a cup. I'm very sorry -- I've lost your pen. I forgot to post your letter. I'm really sorry. Sorry I'm late. The traffic was terrible.</td>
<td>That's all right. I'll speak slowly. That's OK. Don't worry. It doesn't matter. I've got lots of pens. Never mind. I can post it later. Oh, don't worry about it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Glossary**
- apologize to someone  
- say sorry to someone  
- rude  
- polite  
- that's all right  
- don't worry  
- it doesn't matter  
- never mind  
- These phrases all mean "It's not important. It's OK."
- break  
- broke

- lose  
- lost  
- If you lose something, you can't find it.
- forget  
- forgot  
- forgotten  
- remember

- really sorry
- very sorry
- sorry I'm late
- not sorry I'm late

**Correct the mistakes.**

1. I'm sorry for be late. 
   A I'm really sorry. I've lose your dictionary. 
   B Don't mind. 
   2. A I'm sorry, I've forget your book. 
   B No worry. 
   3. A I've break your cup -- I'm very sorry. 
   B It isn't matter. 

**Complete the dialogues.**

1. A I'm really ______.  
   B ______ it's all right.  
   2. A Sorry I'm late.  
   B Don't ______.  
   3. A I'm ______ sorry.  
   B It doesn't ______.  
   4. A It's broken -- I'm very sorry.  
   B Oh, never ______.  
   5. A I'm sorry ______ late. I missed the bus.  
   B That's OK.  
   6. A ______, could you repeat that, please?  
   B Sure, no ______.  
   7. A Did he ______ to you?  
   B Yes, he was very sorry.  
   8. A Did he say sorry?  
   B No, he's very ______.  

**Test yourself. Cover the responses in the table and read the sentences on the left. Give correct responses.**
I can express my opinion

1. Put the words in order, and add one more word to make a sentence.

- I think the school is excellent.
- Yes, I agree.
- He wants our opinion of the course.
- Well, I don't think it's very good.
- I thought it was a very funny book.
- I agree with you. I loved it.
- What do you think of London?
- Personally, I don't like big cities.
- I like this dress. What do you think?
- I'm not sure. I think I prefer the other one.
- Max said the course was a waste of money.
- I disagree. I thought it was great.

2. Complete the dialogues.

- I love this colour. What do you ___________ of it? - ___________, I don't like it very much.
- Pete likes it. What's your ___________? - Yes, I ___________ with him. I think it's great.
- What did you think ___________ her idea? - Personally, I didn't ___________ it was very good.
- I really like her new flat. - I'm not ___________; it's a bit small. I think I ___________ her old one.

3. ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree? Write your opinion, or ask another student what they think.

1. I think people watch too much TV.
2. Smoking's bad for you.
3. I think football's boring.
4. Money makes you happy.
5. Public transport in my country is excellent.
69 I can use the phone

A Phone vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phone numbers</th>
<th>What's your phone number? ~ It's 245731.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What's your mobile number? ~ It's 07700 900 796.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What's the area code for Liverpool? ~ It's 0151.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phone verbs</th>
<th>You call or ring someone, pr rang = phone someone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You text someone. = send someone a text (message)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e.g. CULAR = see you later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You take a message. = take information during a phone call and give it to someone else</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You leave a message. = give information to someone on the phone who then gives it to someone else</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phone problems</th>
<th>The line is engaged/busy. = the person you phoned is speaking on the phone already</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The person is out/isn't in. = not there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It's the wrong number. = you make a mistake with the number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The battery's flat on the mobile. = no electricity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Same or different? Write S or D.

- He phoned/rang his sister. S
- What's your phone/mobile number? D
- ... two six oh/zero four D
- I left/took a message. S
- I'm sorry, she isn't in's out. D
- The line was busy/engaged. S
- I texted them/sent him a text. D

2 Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.

1 Did you r call her this morning? ~ Yes, but the line was e. I'll p. her later.
2 What's your phone n? ~ It's 345489. And the c. for Oxford is 01865.
3 Did you m. Sue last night? ~ Yes, but she was o. too, so I left a m. I r. her mobile too, but I think the b. was flat.
4 Hello, can I speak to Charlie, please? ~ Sorry, you've got the w. number.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What's your phone number, area code and mobile number?
2 Who do you ring most often?
3 How long do you spend on the phone every day?
4 Do you text a lot? If so, who to?
B Phone conversations

Laura (L) is phoning Brenda (B).
B Hello?
L Is that Brenda?
B Yes, speaking.
L Oh, hello. This is Laura, Laura Prebairn.
B Hi, Laura, how are you?
L I'm fine thanks. Is Jessica in, please?
B Yes, just a moment – I'll get her for you...
Anton Jackson (AJ) is speaking to a receptionist (R).
R Hello?
AJ Oh, hello. Can I speak to Mr Ellis, please?
R I'm sorry, but he's out at the moment. Who's calling?
AJ It's Anton Jackson.
R Right, and do you want to leave a message?
AJ Yes, please. Can you tell him I'll ring him back this evening?
R Of course, no problem.
AJ Thanks very much. Goodbye.

4 Tick (✓) the correct response.

1 Hello?
   □ He's not in at the moment. ✓ He's not in just a moment.
   □ Speaking.

2 Can I speak to Lia Ponte, please?
   □ Just a moment. □ It's Natasza.

3 Hello, is it Galina?
   □ Oh, hello, this is Carla. □ Speaking.

4 Hello, this is Angela Brandt.
   □ Oh, hello, how are you? □ Who's calling?

5 Complete the conversations.

1 A Hello?
   B Hello. ▶ Is that Marisa?
   A Yes, (1) __________________ .
   B Oh, hello. (2) __________________ Dagmar.
   A Oh, hello, Dagmar.
   B Is Mikki (3) __________________ ?
   A I'm sorry, he's out at (4) __________________ .
   Can I take a message?
   B Yes, please. Tell him I'll (5) ____________ him ____________ after lunch.

2 A Hello?
   B Oh, can I (6) ____________ Tibor, please?
   A Yes, (7) ____________ moment. I'll (8) ____________ him for you.

3 A Hello?
   B Oh, hello. (9) ____________ Joanna?
   A Yes, (10) ____________________ .
   B Hello, Joanna, (11) ____________ 's Rudy.
   A Hi, Rudy. How are you?
Review: Social English

Unit 60

1 Do these have the same meaning or a different meaning? Write S or D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Afternoon!</th>
<th>Good afternoon!</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Morning!</td>
<td>Good morning!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Hi</td>
<td>Bye!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I'm fine.</td>
<td>I'm very well.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>See you later.</td>
<td>See you tomorrow.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Good to meet you.</td>
<td>Nice to meet you.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>How are you?</td>
<td>How are things?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Hello.</td>
<td>Hi, there.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Bye!</td>
<td>Goodbye!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>How do you do?</td>
<td>How are you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>I've got to go.</td>
<td>I must go.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Find nine more phrases. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across ← → .

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>↑good</th>
<th>→ evening</th>
<th>↑ hope</th>
<th>bad → how do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>later</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>↑ not you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>again</td>
<td>↑ how are do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↑ see</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>soon you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there</td>
<td>↑ hi</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>↑ nice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>↑ see hands</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 61

What do you say in these situations?

► It's Christmas Day. _______________
1 It's your friend's birthday. _______________
2 You say goodbye to a colleague on Friday afternoon. _______________
3 Someone tells you they are getting married. _______________
4 A friend is going to take an exam. _______________
5 A friend has passed an exam. _______________
6 Someone has returned home after a long time. _______________
7 A friend is starting a holiday tomorrow. _______________
8 It's the first day of January. _______________
Unit 62

1 What is the correct question word or phrase for each answer?

- **1** When/What time? — 7.30 p.m.  
- **2** — Fifteen.  
- **3** — Because I like it.  
- **4** — Ten kilometres.  
- **5** — Next to the bank.  
- **6** — Three hours.  
- **7** — It's mine.  
- **8** — I prefer this one.  
- **9** — Twice a week.  
- **10** — It's John.

2 Circle the correct form then write your answers.

- **What?** How's your English like?  
- **1** I've got one sister. **What's?** How about you?  
- **2** And what **do** you do?  
- **3** And what **does/does/are** your best friend do?  
- **4** How **often/many** do you study English every week?  
- **5** How **long/long time** have you studied English?  
- **6** What kind/kind of games do you like?  

Unit 63

1 Complete the sentences with / or you.

- **1** Can I __________ borrow a dictionary, please?
- **2** __________ mind if __________ go now?
- **3** __________ afraid __________ need this.
- **4** Can __________ lend me your bike, please?
- **5** Is it OK if __________ leave the car here?
- **6** Could __________ borrow €10, please?
- **7** Is it all right if __________ use your phone?
- **8** Could __________ take it to the postbox, please?
- **9** Dine, could __________ change places with Mia?

2 Find five more responses in the box to the request. Write them below.

- **no**  
- **ahead**  
- **afraid**  
- **problem of**  
- **I**  
- **it**  
- **need**  
- **sure**  
- **that's**  
- **yes**  
- **go**  
- **I'm**  
- **course**  
- **fine**

Could I possibly borrow your car tomorrow?

- **Yes, sure.**  
- **Sure, go ahead.**  
- **Yes, you can borrow it.**  
- **Sure, I'll bring it over.**  
- **Yes, you can.**
Unit 64

Correct one mistake in each sentence.

Do you want to come to a party tonight?  
A Would you want to have lunch tomorrow?  
B I'm afraid but I can't.

Do you like to go skiing this weekend?  
A Yes, that is fun!  
B What about you?

Do you want to go round here for a drink tonight?  
A Yes, I love it, but I'm busy.  
B ...

Do you want come round for a meal at the weekend?  
A I sorry, but I'm busy this weekend.  
B ...

Unit 65

Complete the dialogue.

A Would you like to go out tomorrow?  
B Yes. Where do we go?
A Well, (2) we (3) go swimming.  
B Mmm. I'm not about that. It's a bit cold for swimming.
A OK. What going to an exhibition?
A Yes, that's a good. (7) 's do that.

Unit 66

Change two words to make the pairs of sentences correct.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Yes, thanks.</th>
<th>No, please.</th>
<th>Yes, please. No, thanks.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Would you want a sandwich?</td>
<td>Do you like a drink?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Do you need a help?</td>
<td>Do you want some help?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>No, I'm worry, thanks.</td>
<td>No, don't fine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Thanks a very.</td>
<td>Thank you lot much.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>'ll me pay for the coffees.</td>
<td>Let I do that for you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>That's much kind of you.</td>
<td>Thank you very.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 67

Read the situations, then write the dialogues. Use as many different phrases as possible.

1. Someone lends you a pen and you lose it.
   A. I’m sorry, I’ve lost your pen.
   B. That’s OK, don’t worry.

2. Someone asked you to post a letter yesterday, but you forgot.
   A. ______________
   B. ______________

3. You arrange to meet someone, but you are late.
   A. ______________
   B. ______________

4. You make coffee for someone, but break one of their cups.
   A. ______________
   B. ______________

5. Someone says something to you, but you can’t hear it.
   A. ______________
   B. ______________

Unit 68

Make words from the letters. Use the definitions to help you.

- To have an idea about something
  1. What you think about something
  2. Very good
  3. Have a different opinion from someone
  4. Like one thing more than another
  5. Used to introduce your opinion
  6. A bad use of money

- hiktin: think
- noipoin: opinion
- telecnie: reviews
- grheadr: difference
- neerpf: prefer
- spanerloy: opinion
- stofaewa: waste

Unit 69

1. Rewrite the underlined words but keep the meaning the same.

   - I’m sorry, Paul is out. isn’t he.
     1. ______________
   - I can’t phone her now.
     2. ______________
   - Is that Sue? Yes, this is Sue.
     3. ______________
   - I’ll call you back later.
     4. ______________
   - Can I speak to Anton? Yes, wait a minute.
     5. ______________
   - She texted me earlier.
     6. ______________

2. Write the phone conversation in the right order.

   Yes, just a moment - I’ll get her.

   - Hello?
     1. A ______________
     2. B ______________
   - Hello, Keira. How are you?
     3. A ______________
     4. B ______________
   - Is that Cheryl?
     5. A ______________
     6. B ______________
   - I’m fine, thanks. Er, is Jessica in?
     7. A ______________
     8. B ______________
   - Thanks.
     9. ______________
   - Yes, speaking.
    10. ______________
    11. A ______________
    12. B ______________
   - Hi. It’s Keira.
    13. ______________
    14. ______________

REVIEW: SOCIAL ENGLISH 171
70 I can use common adjectives

A Common opposites

1. She's asleep. off awake
2. The bird's dead. off alive
3. He's very strong. off weak
4. She's a rich woman. off poor
5. These are common names in Italy. off unusual
6. This Swiss knife's very useful. off useless
7. The screen is very wide. off narrow
8. The children are noisy. off quiet

Position of adjectives

Adjectives usually go before a noun. They can also go after be. It's a quiet village. The village is quiet.
You can't use alive, awake and asleep before a noun. The man is alive. Not as alive as him.

1. True or false? Write T or F.
   The River Nile is very narrow. F
   1. Julius Caesar is still alive.  
   2. People are noisy at football matches. 
   3. Dictionaries are useless. 
   4. Some people talk when they're asleep.
   5. Elephants are very strong. 
   6. America is a poor country. 
   7. Toyota cars are common in Japan. 
   8. Pasta is unusual in Italy. 

2. Write the opposite of the bold word.
   They're very rich. poor
   1. It's a useless knife. 
   2. My arms are quite strong. 
   3. Is he alive? 
   4. The people are very poor. 
   5. It's a noisy place.
   6. It's a quiet town.
   7. The garden's quite wide.
   8. That's very common.
   9. Is she awake?
   10. It's quite a narrow road.

3. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the adjectives and their opposites.
### Classroom habits

**Teachers:**
- **Simon:** I tell my students to write new words in a vocabulary notebook, I think it’s really **helpful**.
- **Jill:** It’s very annoying when students are late for class.
- **Martin:** When students do activities, I have to give clear instructions.
- **Carol:** I don’t like students who talk when I’m listening to other students. That’s really **irritating**.

**Students:**
- **Petra:** It’s impossible to remember everything, so it’s necessary to revise things you’ve studied in class.
- **Ivan:** I write new words on my hand, and then on my arm. It’s a strange thing to do, and some students think I’m mad.
- **Yoko:** I repeat new words four or five times; it’s the only way to remember.
- **Jean Pierre:** In English, you often write words in one way and say them in another; it’s very confusing.

### Glossary

- helpful: useful or giving help
- annoying: if something is annoying, it makes you a bit angry. syn irritating
- clear: easy to understand or confusing
- impossible: not possible or possible
- necessary: If something is necessary, you must have it or do it. or unnecessary
- strange: unusual and perhaps not normal or odd
- mad: very unusual and not normal or crazy
- it’s the only way: there is no other way

### 4. Write SYN (synonym) or OPP (opposite) next to each pair of words.

- possible/impossible OPP
- mad/crazy
- annoying/irritating
- necessary/unnecessary
- clear/confusing
- odd/strange

### 5. Complete the sentences.

- I’ve got two dictionaries. One of them is unnecessary.
- His explanation was very difficult; I didn’t understand anything.
- An old man in the street was very friendly and gave me directions.
- It’s possible to fly round the world in five hours.
- My brother has got three jobs, and works every day of the year. I think he’s necessary.
- I was the last person to come by car; the others took the bus or walked.
- Cookery books are useful, but they aren’t necessary.
- My cat is very odd. He likes dog food more than cat food.
- He gave me very clear instructions to get to the house, so I had no problems.
- My sister talks all the time when I’m watching TV; it’s very annoying.
I can use common adverbs

A Emphasis

| only       | We use only to say 'no more than'.
|------------|----------------------------------
|            | She was only 17 when she got married. (It's unusual to get married at 17.)
|            | We can walk to the station — it's only five minutes. (Not 15 or 20.) |
| even       | We often use even before a fact that is surprising or difficult to believe.
|            | It's cold here, even in summer. (In most places, it's warm in the summer.)
|            | My older brother is 1.90m, and my younger brother is even taller. |
| still      | We use still to say that a fact or situation continues to be true.
|            | After 25 years, I still love my job. (I continue to love my job.)
|            | Do they live in Paris now? — No, they're still in London. |
| especially (also particularly) | We use especially to say 'more than others' or 'more than usual'.
|            | We liked the towns in the south, especially Seville. (Seville was the best.)
|            | It's very hot here, especially in July and August. (July and August are the hottest.) |

1 Put the word in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.
   ► It's six kilometres to the next town. (only) It's only six kilometres to the next town.
   1 He's 75 and he plays tennis. (still)
   2 It's nice there, in the morning. (especially)
   3 There are three students in the class. (only)
   4 He works on Sundays. (even)
   5 She's at university. (still)
   6 Rio is big, but Sao Paolo is bigger. (even)

2 Circle the correct answer.
   ► The food is good there, only (especially) the fish.
   1 He was only 15 when he left school.
   2 I've seen the film five times and I even enjoy it.
   3 The students are very nice, still (particularly) Marcel.
   4 There are even/only three bridges like this in the world.
   5 It was cold yesterday but it's even/colder today.
   6 I study hard but my English is still/only terrible.

3 Complete the sentences.
   ► He's ninety, but he (sixth) drives a car.
   1 (thirty) four people came to the party; it was a bit sad.
   2 They've been in Hong Kong for ten years and they (prefer) like living there.
   3 I love fish, (seal) salmon.
   4 He can't drive; he's (nineteen) 15.
   5 Jacqui's thin, but her sister is (thinner) thinner.
   6 She enjoyed the book, (first) the first part.
B Degree

- **a bit/a little**: Use *a bit* or *a little* before an adjective or comparative adjective, but not before a positive adjective. *(sort a bit good)*
The lesson was *a bit* boring. *It's a little* warmer than yesterday.

- **quite**: *more than a bit, but less than very*
The film was *quite* interesting. *The town is quite* big.

- **extremely**: *a bit stronger than very*
Use *extremely* before gradable adjectives (see spotlight).
*I was extremely* tired by 6 o'clock. *We were extremely* busy on Saturday.

- **absolutely**: Use *absolutely* before ungradable adjectives (see spotlight) for emphasis.
The food was *absolutely* delicious. *The party was absolutely* fantastic.

- **really**: *very, extremely or absolutely*
You can use *really* with gradable and ungradable adjectives, and with verbs.
The restaurant was *really* good. *The weather was really* terrible.
*We were really* tired. *I really* liked the film.

---

4. **Circle the correct answer.**
   Sometimes both answers are correct.
   - It was *quiety* bit interesting.
   - This programme is *realty/absolutely* terrible.
   1. The weather was *very/absolutely* nice.
   2. Her new shoes are *very/absolutely* wonderful.
   3. My sister is *a bit/a little* untidy.
   4. I *really/extremely* want to go to Australia.
   5. She was *very/absolutely* friendly.
   6. Their flat is *a bit/quite* nice.
   7. The hotel was *very/absolutely* good.
   8. The boat is *extremely/really* enormous.

---

5. **Rewrite the sentences. Use an adverb with a similar meaning to the underlined word(s).**
   - The film was a *bit* boring. *The film was a little* boring.
   - The children were *really* fantastic. *The children were absolutely* fantastic.
   1. He was *very* good.
   2. The holiday was *absolutely* wonderful.
   3. She's a *little* unfriendly.
   4. The kitchen was *extremely* clean.
   5. The room was *a bit* small.
   6. Her new boyfriend is *really* awful.
   7. They're *really* nice people.
   8. The weather was *absolutely* terrible.
72 I can use irregular verbs

A Past tenses

Here are some common irregular verbs with their past tense forms. A more complete list is on page 202.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be</th>
<th>bring</th>
<th>buy</th>
<th>cost</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>feel</th>
<th>find</th>
<th>flew</th>
<th>forgot</th>
<th>gave</th>
<th>went</th>
<th>grew</th>
<th>held</th>
<th>run</th>
<th>run</th>
<th>stand</th>
<th>stood</th>
<th>swim</th>
<th>took</th>
<th>taught</th>
<th>thought</th>
<th>won</th>
<th>wrote</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>flowed</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>wrote</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Circle the right answers.
   - Three verbs which change from 'i' to 'a' in the past tense.
     - put, cost, run
   - Three verbs which have the same form in the infinitive and the past tense.
     - put, cost, run
   - Three verbs which change from 'i' to 'o' in the past tense.
     - write, drive, give
   - Three verbs which change the final 'd' to 't' in the past tense.
     - spend, stand, send
   - Three verbs which change from 'o' to 'e' in the past tense.
     - know, hold, cost
   - Three verbs which form the past tense with 'ought'.
     - teach, buy, bring, think

2. Find eight more past tense verbs.
   - moved, spoke, looked, kept, drank, couldn't, found, felt, asked

3. Complete the sentences using the correct verb in the past tense.
   - This coat _________ more than €500.
     - cost
   - I _________ so tired, I _________ for ten hours.
     - was, slept
   - We _________ across the river.
     - swam
   - I _________ her on my mobile.
     - phoned
   - He _________ the email but it _________ to send it.
     - wrote, failed
   - They _________ the film last night.
     - saw
   - She _________ a new car yesterday.
     - bought
   - They _________ up when he came in.
     - got
   - We _________ a taxi, then _________ to the cinema.
     - took, went

4. Test yourself. Cover the past tense forms and look at the infinitives. What are the past tense forms?
B Past participles

Here are the same irregular verbs as on page 175 with their past participle forms. A more complete list is on page 202.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be</th>
<th>bring</th>
<th>buy</th>
<th>cost</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>feel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>been</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>done</td>
<td>driven</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>fly</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>grow</td>
<td>hold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>found</td>
<td>flown</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
<td>given</td>
<td>gone</td>
<td>grown</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>leave</td>
<td>lend</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kept</td>
<td>known</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>seen</td>
<td>spend</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoken</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>taken</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>think</td>
<td>write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stood</td>
<td>swum</td>
<td>taken</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Eleven more of these verbs have the same form in the past tense and past participle, e.g. find, found, found. Write the past tense/past participle below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>find</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>leave</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>know</th>
<th>cost</th>
<th>run</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>think</th>
<th>put</th>
<th>fly</th>
<th>feel</th>
<th>hold</th>
<th>stand</th>
<th>up</th>
<th>write</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>found</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Write the past participle of the verbs below. What is similar about them?

- fly flown
- forget
- 1 forget
- 2 give
- 3 see
- 4 take
- 5 write
- 6 know
- 7 speak
- 8 drive
- 9 grow

7 Complete the questions with a past participle of a verb from the box. You will answer the questions in Exercise 8.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>teach</th>
<th>read</th>
<th>swim</th>
<th>sleep</th>
<th>speak</th>
<th>send</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>lend</th>
<th>win</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Have you ever ...

- lend someone a lot of money?
- 1 lent
- 2 an English newspaper?
- 3 a Porsche?
- 4 any money?
- 5 an email to the wrong person?
- 6 on a boat?
- 7 in the Mediterranean Sea?
- 8 to a famous person?

8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.

9 Test yourself. Cover the past participle forms and look at the infinitives. What are the past participle forms?
73 I can use phrasal verbs

A Meaning

Most phrasal verbs have a verb (sit, stand, get, etc.) and a particle (up, on, off, etc.). Sometimes, the meaning of the two parts is easy to understand.

Sometimes the two parts form a new meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>give something up</td>
<td>He had to give up football.</td>
<td>stop doing something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on with someone</td>
<td>I like Sue; we get on well.</td>
<td>have a good relationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off</td>
<td>The plane couldn't take off.</td>
<td>leave the ground and start flying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow up</td>
<td>When Ben grows up, he wants to be a vet.</td>
<td>change from a child to an adult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find out something</td>
<td>I must find out the times of the trains to Southampton.</td>
<td>find a fact or piece of information you need/want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go out</td>
<td>Let's go out this evening.</td>
<td>leave your home to do a social activity, e.g. cinema, disco, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Circle the correct particle.
   ▶ I'd like to lie ______________ for a few minutes.
   1 Can we find __________ the cost of the tickets?
   2 Where did she grow __________?
   3 He fell __________ when he ran down the road.
   4 Do you want to go __________ this evening?
   5 Pearl wants to give __________ her job.
   6 Do you get __________ well with your parents?

2 Complete the sentences with the correct particle.
   ▶ Pasha doesn't want to go __________ this evening; she's tired.
   1 I don't know the name of the hotel, but I can find __________.
   2 Everyone stood __________, when he came into the room.
   3 Maciej doesn't spend much time with his sister; they don't get __________ very well.
   4 She sat __________ at the table and started eating.
   5 The doctor told me to lie __________ on the bed.
   6 I told my brother to give __________ smoking.
   7 The plane took __________ half an hour late because of the bad weather.
   8 She fell __________ in the street, but several people helped her.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the phrasal verbs? Then, cover the meanings and examples and look at the phrasal verbs in the table. What does each verb mean?
B Grammar

Some phrasal verbs don’t have an object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go up</td>
<td>The price of petrol will go up soon.</td>
<td>increase, become more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry on with something</td>
<td>Can we carry on with the exercise?</td>
<td>continue with something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go back</td>
<td>She wants to go back to London.</td>
<td>return to a place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake up</td>
<td>I always wake up at 7:00 a.m.</td>
<td>stop sleeping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other phrasal verbs need an object. It can go before or after the particle.

Take off your jacket. Could you turn on the light? Put on your shoes.

Take it off. (surt. Take off it.) Could you turn it on? (surt. turn on it.)

Try them on? (surt. try on them.) Look it up in that dictionary. (surt. Look up it.)

4 Change the bold words to it or them. Put the pronoun in the correct place.

- Look up the word. Lock it up. ........................................... 4 Put those socks on.
- Look up both words. Lock them up. ................................... 5 Take off your shoes.
- 1 Take off your jacket. .................................................. 6 Try on this shirt.
- 2 Try on these trousers. ................................................ 7 Turn on the lights.
- 3 Turn on the TV. ........................................................... 8 Put your coat on.

5 Are the sentences correct or do they need the pronoun it? Where? Look at the examples.

- Could you turn on, please? Could you turn it on, please?
- Please sit down. Connect
- 1 Could I try on?
- 2 Do you want to go back?
- 3 You can take off if you’re hot.
- 4 Look up in the dictionary.
- 5 His salary will go up soon.
- 6 Do they want to stop or carry on?
- 7 Did you put on?
- 8 What time do you usually wake up?

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Where did you grow up?
2 How do you feel when you wake up?
3 How often do you go out in the evenings?
4 Do you get on well with people who live near you?
5 When you buy clothes, do you usually try them on first?
74 I can use prepositions of time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Example 1</th>
<th>Example 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>at</td>
<td>at six o’clock at midnight</td>
<td>a mealtime at breakfast/lunch/dinner (time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>on Tuesday on Friday evening on Tuesdays = every Tuesday on my birthday on Christmas Day</td>
<td>a date on September 1st on the sixth of May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>a part of a day in the morning in the afternoon in the evening</td>
<td>a season in (the) spring/summer in (the) autumn/winter a month, year or century in July/November in 1990/2050 in the 21st century = 2000 – 2099</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

spotlight at

We also use at in these phrases:
- I relax at the weekend.
- Some doctors work at night.
- What are you doing at Christmas/ at New Year?

1 Cross out the word or phrase which is not correct.

1 in the spring/February 15th/the evening
2 at tea time/2005/the weekend
3 in August/summer/Friday
4 on April/your birthday/Saturdays
5 at night/the morning/half past seven
6 on midnight/June 2nd/Sunday afternoon
7 at breakfast/midday/the autumn
8 on winter/Christmas Day/the fifth of May
9 in the afternoon/dinner time/2008
10 at New Year/the evening/six o’clock

2 Write the correct preposition in each space.

We went to Brighton for a few days last week. We left on Thursday morning (1) about nine, and got there (2) lunchtime. We found a nice hotel, and then (3) the afternoon we went to the beach. The weather can be quite cold (4) spring, but it was great – really sunny. (5) Friday we had lunch with an old friend who I met at university (6) 1997. Then (7) the evening, we went to a restaurant, and got home (8) midnight. (9) the weekend, we went shopping and then went back to the beach. We’d like to go back for the Brighton Festival which starts (10) 6 May.

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers using a preposition and a time phrase from the table, or ask another student.

When do you …
1 get up?
2 study English?
3 go swimming?
4 watch TV?
5 go to sleep?
When was the last time you …
6 saw your family?
7 went on holiday?
8 went to the mountains?
9 went to bed very late?
10 went to a party?
A Past, present and future

Look at the diary and read the sentences below. It’s midday on Thursday, 11 April.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>APRIL</th>
<th>Mon  8</th>
<th>Mon 15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jon</td>
<td>London</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and</td>
<td>dinner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trish</td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:30</td>
<td>Scott.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tues 9</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>phone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bill</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wed 10</td>
<td>back</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Liz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>meet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brian</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>email</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9:00</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>meeting</td>
<td>Theatre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:00</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brian’s</td>
<td>Pete’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1:30</td>
<td>birthday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mark’s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>shop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sat 13</td>
<td>stay</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>at</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gary’s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I was in Moscow last week.
I saw Jon and Trish three days ago.
I had lunch with Liz yesterday.
I went out with Brian last night.
I’m going to the cinema this evening.

I’ve got a meeting tomorrow morning.
I’m going to stay at Gary’s this weekend.
Then I’m in London for three days next week.
I have a doctor’s appointment next Thursday.
I’m seeing my parents in ten days’ time.

1 True or false? Write T or F.

1 I was in Moscow last week.   T
2 I got back from Moscow four days ago.  
3 I saw Jon and Trish this week.    
4 I paid the phone bill three days ago. 
5 I met Brian yesterday. ________
6 I was in London last week. ________
7 I’m going to the cinema this afternoon.  ________
8 I’m going out tomorrow evening. ________
9 I’m seeing Scott in four days’ time.  ________
10 I’m seeing the doctor in a week’s time. ________

2 Complete the sentences.

1 We saw them yesterday evening. ________
2 She saw Paul about three days ________.
3 I wrote Pete’s birthday in my ________.
4 He wants to come in a week’s ________.
5 She can’t come. She’s got a dentist’s ________.
6 I’m going to Italy ________ week.

3 Look at the diary again. It is now Wednesday, 17 April. Write three more things about last week and three things about this week.

1 I had lunch with Liz a week ago. ________
2 ________ on Thursday evening.
3 ________ five days ago.
4 ________ tomorrow morning.
5 ________ in three days’ time.
6 ________ this weekend.

Glossary

last week = April 1 – 7 this week = April 8 – 14
next week = April 15 – 21
yesterday = April 10
yesterday evening = April 10 evening
last night = April 9
yesterday night = April 9 evening
last weekend = April 8 – 9
appointment = a meeting at a fixed time, often with one person, usually for work or with a doctor, dentist, etc.
B Words and phrases often confused

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>before/after</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We did some shopping before lunch. We went for a coffee after lunch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>at the moment/in a minute</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm very busy at the moment. = I'm very busy now. wr = in this moment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll speak to you in a minute. = I'll speak to you one or two minutes from now.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>soon/later</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm going home soon. = I'm going home in a short time from now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can I talk to you later? = Can I talk to you in the future but not now?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>until</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We worked until ten o'clock. = We stopped work at 10.00, or by 10:00.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I want to stay here until July. = I don't want to go before July.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for/since</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I moved to this house. Sarah was born.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarah is now five years old.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've lived here since Sarah was born.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've lived here for five years.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Circle the correct answer.

- Dinner will be ready at a minute.
  1. I had a shower before/after I went to bed.
  2. We went home before/after work and watched TV.
  3. I usually work until/for one o'clock, and then have a sandwich.
  4. She's in the library at the moment.
  5. I haven't seen her for/since last week.
  6. I'm very busy this morning. Can I phone you later/soon?
  7. She has worked here for/since seven years.
  8. The taxi will be here later/soon. Are you ready?

5 Complete the sentences. Use soon, later, before, at, in, until, for or since.

- I had a rest after lunch.
  1. She waited until 7.00, then went home.
  2. He's been here for three weeks.
  3. I'm getting tired. Can we go home soon?
  4. Can you help me? = Yes, I'll be with you a minute.
  5. What are you doing at the moment?
  6. We haven't seen them last summer.
  7. I wrote the email I went out.
  8. I'm busy tomorrow. Can we go out this week?

6 Translate the words in bold in this unit into your own language.
76 I can use prepositions of place and movement

A in, at, on

at a position, for example a place to meet or where something happens
Let's meet at the bank/at the bus stop.
I saw him at the match/at the party
at home/at work/at school.

in a three-dimensional space
in a box, a cupboard
in a room, an office, a flat
in a garden, a park

in a big area
in a village/town/city
in the countryside
in London/Spain/Asia/the world

on a line
on the road, the coast
the river

on a surface
on the table, the wall
on the first floor

in or on? He's in the river.
She's on the river.

1 Circle the correct preposition.
   ▶ I live in/in on Canada.
1 She's not in/on her office.
2 The photos are in/on the wall.
3 We met in/at a golf match.
4 We stayed in/on a lovely village.
5 She's swimming in/on the pool.
6 Barcelona is in/on the coast.
7 We live at/in the countryside.
8 There are too many cars in/on the road.
9 Dinner is on/at the table.
10 They're sitting in/at the garden.
11 The books are on/in the table.
12 I saw her in/at the bus stop.
13 The number is in/on the door.
14 I spoke to her in/at the party.

2 Complete the questions with in, on, or at.
   ▶ Which country do you live _______?
   1 Do you live _______ a village, a town, or a city?
   2 Do you live _______ a flat or a house?
   3 Is your town _______ a river?
   4 Which floor is your bedroom _______?
   5 Do you like walking _______ the countryside?
   6 Are you learning _______ school, _______ work,
or _______ an English-speaking country?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.

LANGUAGE 183
B Other prepositions

The people are in front of the garage.
The postman is between mum and dad.
The adults are behind the children.
The tree is near the house.

The office is above the garage.
The garage is below the office.
The seat is next to the bus stop.
The bus stop is opposite the garage.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

1. The tree's opposite the house. ...F...
2. The blue car's near the house. ...
3. The people are opposite the garage. ...
4. The postman's next to mum. ...
5. The seat's between the house and the tree. ...
6. The children are behind mum and dad. ...
7. The girl's in front of the postman. ...
8. The front door's below the big window. ...
9. The bus stop's next to the green car. ...

5 Complete the sentences.

1. The tree's ______________________ the blue car.
2. The bus stop is _____________ the seat.
3. The boy's standing ____________ dad.
4. The green car's ____________ the bus stop.
5. The bus stop is _____________ the green car and the seat.
6. The seat is _____________ the garage.
7. The postman's _____________ dad.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1. What's opposite the building where you live? ________________________________
2. What's behind your building? ________________________________
3. What's next to it? ________________________________
4. Are there any shops near it? ________________________________
5. What's above your living room? ________________________________
6. What's below your bedroom? ________________________________

7 Test yourself. Cover the sentences and look at the picture.
What can you say about ... the people? the postman? the office? the garage? the seat? the bus stop?
C Prepositions of movement

- go out of
- go into
- go across
- go down
- go up
- go along
- go past the church
- go through
- go under
- go over

8 Circle the correct word.

- Don’t run down the church.  
- Walk under the field.
- Drive along the city/motorway.
- Don’t go across the river/gate.
- Go into the beach/shop.
- Walk through the gate/stairs.

6 I ran past the bus stop/countryside.
7 Go up the floor/mountain.
8 Don’t run down the stairs/bridge.
9 Walk out of the building/hill.
10 We flew over the sky/field.

9 Complete 1–10 with a preposition in each sentence.

- Go straight on ______ this road.
- We shouted hello as the boat went ______ the bridge.
- She went ______ the hotel and spoke to the receptionist.
- They drove ______ the hill to look at the view from the top.
- We walked ______ the river for about thirty minutes, then walked back.
- We drove ______ a restaurant on the way to the station.
- He came ______ the door and fell over; it was very funny.
- I came ______ the bank and saw the accident.
- We went ______ the hill, into the valley below.
- The dog saw a cat in one of the gardens and he just ran ______ the road.
- We swam ______ the bridge, so they couldn’t see us.

10 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Can you remember the prepositions?
77 I can use link words (1)

**A And, also, too, as well**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The centre is dirty <em>and</em> very noisy.</th>
<th>And links two ideas in one sentence, sometimes with a comma (,).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The centre is dirty. <em>and it's also</em> very expensive. <em>and it also</em> costs a lot to live there.</td>
<td>Also goes after auxiliary verbs, e.g. be, can, but before the main verb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The centre is dirty. <em>and it's very expensive</em> <em>and it costs a lot to live there</em> <em>too.</em> <em>as well.</em></td>
<td>Too and <em>as well</em> go at the end of the sentence. Too and <em>as well</em> are more informal than <em>also</em>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Are _also_, _too_ or _as well_ in the correct positions? Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗).
   - You need a dictionary, and as well a grammar book is useful. ✓
   - The house is beautiful, and it's near the park also. ✓
   - He speaks German, and he understands too Greek. ☑
   - We went out for dinner and Lucy came as well. ☑
   - I cleaned the house and washed also the car. ☑
   - She worked in Rome, and I think she worked in Ravenna too. ✗
   - We've got a big garden and as well a park near the house. ✗

2. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

   - too / and it's good / the weather's / in autumn / nice / in winter
     The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too. ☑
   - yogurt / also / like / and I
     I often eat ice cream. ✗
   - but I go / too / watching TV / to the cinema a lot
     I enjoy watching TV. ☑
   - German / as well / understand / I can / and
     I can speak English. ☑
   - also / but I / music / of books / listen to
     I read a lot. ☑
   - and / on TV / I watch it / as well / football
     I play football. ✗

3. **ABOUT YOU** Are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you? Write _true_ or _false_.
   - The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too. _false_
## Reason and result

**Why did you go into the café?**

| I went into the café **because** it was raining. | because (of) comes before the reason    |
| I went into the café **because of** the rain.  | because + clause                        |
| I went into the café **in order to** get out of the rain. | **(in order) to** comes before the reason |
| = I went into the café because it was raining. | **(in order) to** + verb                |
| It was raining, **so** I went into the café.  | **so** comes before the result          |
| = I went into the café because it was raining. | **so** + clause                        |

There is usually a comma (,) before **so**.

### 4 Circle the correct word.

1. I took my umbrella **because** it was raining.
2. I stayed at home **because** the weather.
3. We went to Paris **so** to see a friend.
4. I couldn’t go out **because** I had to study.
5. It was my birthday, **so** we had a party.
6. She went to the market to **because** get a book.
7. She lost her passport, **so** she couldn’t go to China.

### 5 Write **because, because of, so, or to.**

1. The were late **because of** the traffic.
2. I’m going to the chemist’s _to_ get some aspirins.
3. It was a nice day, _so_ we went out.
4. I bought the house _for_ the beautiful view.
5. I don’t go to the theatre very often _because_ it’s too expensive.
6. I’m going out now, _so_ I’ll phone you tomorrow.
7. She went to the centre _to_ meet her friend.
8. I think he married her _because_ her money.
9. Are you studying English _to_ get a better job?

LANGUAGE 187
I can use link words (2)

A When and if (future)

I'll post the letter when I go out. (I'm sure I'm going out later.)
I'll post the letter if I go out. (I'm not sure I'm going out later.)

When I go out, I'll post the letter.
The verb after when or if is usually in the present simple, not the will form.

I'll post the letter when I will go out.

1 Circle the correct answer.
   ▶ I'll tell her if I see her. = I'm sure/not sure that I'll see her.
   1 He'll be OK when he sees her. = He's sure/not sure that he'll see her.
   2 If I go to Beijing, I'll email you. = I'm sure/not sure that I'll go to Beijing.
   3 I'll ring you if I can come. = I'm sure/not sure that I can come.
   4 He'll feel better when he gets home. = It's sure/not sure that he's going home.
   5 When we get on the train, we'll ring you. = It's sure/not sure that we'll get on the train.
   6 You'll find the museum if you take a map. = It's sure/not sure that you'll take a map.

2 Complete the sentences with if or when.
   ▶ If you miss the seven o'clock train, you'll have to walk.
   1 ______ you miss the seven o'clock train, you'll have to walk.
   2 ______, it's cold tonight, we'll have soup.
   3 ______, I'm 30, I'll have a party.
   4 We'll leave ______ it stops raining.
   5 He'll do ______ he wakes up tomorrow.
   6 ______ you lose your key, you can phone me.

B When and while

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When and while both mean 'in that period of time'.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I phoned the doctor when I was on holiday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[past] X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on holiday (a period of time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phoned the doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>= In a period when I was on holiday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When (but not while) also means 'at that moment' or 'at that time'.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I gave Jack the money when he got home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[past] X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he got home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>= at the time I met him</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

188 LANGUAGE
3 Circle the correct answer. Sometimes both answers are correct.
   ▶ The lesson started when/while the students set down.
   1 Come and see me while/when you arrive.
   2 I’ll help with the children when/while you get home.
   3 She saw the accident while/when she was shopping.
   4 She met Mr Jacks while/when she got to the station.
   5 I’ll wash the car while/when you’re at work.
   6 Shall we go out when/while it stops raining?

C A sequence of actions...

   ... and we had a really nice week. Firstly, we spent a few days in Budapest, then we went to Vienna. Afterwards, we went on a tour of the Lakes and stayed in Salzburg for a couple of nights.

   It’s very easy to make. First of all, you fry the meat, and then you fry some onions and add them to the meat. After that, you add some red wine and water and cook slowly for three hours. Finally, you add some red pepper and cook it for fifteen minutes.

4 Complete the texts with link words. Don’t use the same word twice.

   A For this job, firstly, __________ you have to fill in a form. (1) __________ you have to go and talk to the boss. (2) __________, you meet other people who work in the company. (3) __________, you have to do a written test.

   B (4) __________, I checked the train times on the internet, and (5) __________, I looked at the flights to see if they were cheaper.

5 Put the sentences in the correct order. Then add link words.

   ▶ I checked the answers. / I did all the grammar exercises.
   Firstly, of all, I did all the grammar exercises. Then I checked the answers.

   1 She made the pasta sauce. / She boiled the pasta. / She added the sauce to the pasta.
   2 I did a Masters degree. / I did a degree in history. / I got a teaching job in Liverpool.
   _____________________________________________________

   3 We flew back to Rome. / We stayed in Munich for a few days. / We started our holiday in Heidelberg.
   _____________________________________________________

   4 I came home and had a cup of tea. / I cooked the dinner. / I went to the market. / I made a shopping list.
   _____________________________________________________

6 ABOUT YOU Write three or four things you did last weekend. Use link words.

   ▶ Firstly, I
   _____________________________________________________
79 I can use ‘have’ and ‘have got’

A Have and have got

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>My brother has/has got a house in the country.</th>
<th>If you have/have got something, it is yours; it belongs to you.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>His wife hasn’t got an art studio there.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She has/has got a bad cold at the moment.</td>
<td>Use have/have got to describe illness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They have/I’ve got two young daughters.</td>
<td>Use have/have got to describe relationships.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both girls have/have got blonde hair.</td>
<td>Use have/have got to describe appearance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

spotlight have and have got

Have is a full verb. Use do, does and did in questions, short answers and negatives.
Do they have a car? — Yes, they do. I didn’t have a job last year.
In negatives and questions, have got is more common than have with do. We don’t use have got in short answers. Have they got a car? He hasn’t got a bike. He doesn’t have a bike. (less common)

1 Change have to the correct form of have got in each sentence.
   ▶ I have an old car. I’ve got an old car.
   1 She has blue eyes. _____________________________
   2 They have a small dog. _____________________________
   3 I don’t have a mobile phone. _____________________________
   4 He doesn’t have any money. _____________________________
   5 Do you have any sisters? _____________________________
   6 Does she have a flat in town? _____________________________

2 Correct the mistakes.
   ▶ He have a car. He’s got a car. On he has a car.
   1 She got any children? _____________________________
   2 They has got a lovely garden. _____________________________
   3 Have she got long hair? _____________________________
   4 My sister no have a boyfriend. _____________________________
   5 Have you a computer? _____________________________
   6 We don’t got any friends here. _____________________________

3 Complete the questions.

   ▶ Have you got a car?
   1 Have you __________ a bike?
   2 __________ you have a computer?
   3 __________ your parents got a dog?
   4 __________ you got an English dictionary?
   5 __________ you have any English-speaking friends?

   ABOUT YOU

   If so, what kind? _____________________________
   If so, when do you use it? _____________________________
   If so, what kind? _____________________________
   If so, what’s it called? _____________________________
   If so, who are they? _____________________________

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.
B Have + noun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have breakfast/lunch/dinner</th>
<th>We had lunch in a pizzeria.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have a bath</td>
<td>I had a quick shower before I left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a drink/something to eat</td>
<td>I had a drink with Joe last night. Let’s have something to eat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a swim/a walk/a run</td>
<td>I didn’t have a run this morning. We had a nice walk yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a (great/nice/terrible) time/day</td>
<td>We had a great time in Kyoto.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a (good/nice) weekend/holiday/journey</td>
<td>Have a nice weekend. — Yeah, you too.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a break = stop work for a short period and relax</td>
<td>Let’s have a break for ten minutes. I’m going to have a rest this weekend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a rest = relax and do nothing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can’t use have got in these expressions. nor let’s have a break.

5 Make four more groups of phrases with have from the words below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>swim</th>
<th>breakfast</th>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>bath</th>
<th>journey</th>
<th>rest</th>
<th>lunch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 1</th>
<th>Group 2</th>
<th>Group 3</th>
<th>Group 4</th>
<th>Group 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rest</td>
<td>break</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Complete the postcard.

Dear Carla

We’re having a great time here in Parati. Yesterday we had a birthday party in the hotel, and everyone brought a few things. In the evening we had a (1) _______ in the bar that you recommended. Afterwards, we had (2) _______ in a nice Italian restaurant. We’re going to have a (3) _______ in the sea this morning, then maybe do some more swimming this afternoon. I think we’ll have a (4) _______ after that. I hope you’re enjoying yourself in Rio, and have a good (5) _______ back to Buenos Aires on Saturday. See you soon.

Love, Noisy

7 Complete the sentences.

1. I got up late and didn’t have any (breakfast). What about you?
2. I worked hard today, so I’m going to have a (break) this evening.
3. We have a twenty-minute (break) between the lessons.
4. All the buses were late this morning, so I had a bad (wake-up) to work.
5. Did you have a good (sleep) in London yesterday?
6. Have a nice (nap). See you on Monday.
7. They had a fantastic (day) in Mallorca. They were there for three weeks.
8. I always have a shower in the summer, but in winter I prefer to have a (shower).
80 I can use ‘get’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>arrive at</th>
<th>buy</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>become</th>
<th>spotlight ‘get’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We get to London at 6:00.</td>
<td>I got this watch last week.</td>
<td>I go to work.</td>
<td>It’s getting hot in here.</td>
<td>Get is a very common verb in spoken English. It has many meanings, and you need to write down new examples when you meet them. We don’t use it a lot in formal written English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receive</td>
<td>I didn’t get a visa.</td>
<td>obtain</td>
<td>I have to get a job.</td>
<td>travel by</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Rewrite each sentence with the correct form of get. You will complete column 3 in Exercise 2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Did you receive my message?</th>
<th>He gets angry if you’re late.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 I must buy some new clothes.</td>
<td>He gets angry if you’re late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 We arrived home late last night.</td>
<td>He gets angry if you’re late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 It’s becoming cold.</td>
<td>He gets angry if you’re late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I received three letters today.</td>
<td>He gets angry if you’re late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Where did you buy that bag?</td>
<td>He gets angry if you’re late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 He needs to obtain a job.</td>
<td>He gets angry if you’re late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Do you want to travel by train?</td>
<td>He gets angry if you’re late.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Cover sentences 1 – 8 in Exercise 1. Look at the sentences you wrote. What does get mean in each one? Write your answer in column 3.

| He gets angry if you’re late. | become |

3 Complete the sentences in a logical way, using get.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>There weren’t any buses, so we got the train.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Do you want to walk or get the train?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 What time did you get up?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Those shoes are lovely. Where did you get them?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Could you close the window? It’s getting cold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I must go now, it’s getting late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 She sent me an email but I didn’t get it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 I need a map of the town centre. Where can I get one?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 I have to be at the cinema in ten minutes, so I’m going to get the bus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Review: Language

Unit 70

1. Describe each picture with an adjective.
   - [Picture 1] weak
   - [Picture 2] 1
   - [Picture 3] 2
   - [Picture 4] 3
   - [Picture 5] 4

2. Complete the crossword. The letters in grey spell out another word. What is it?
   - ONLY
   - 1 Giving help.
   - 2 Opposite of unusual.
   - 3 Opposite of useful.
   - 4 Synonym of odd.
   - 5 Opposite of quiet.
   - 6 Not important; you don't need it.
   - 7 Opposite of confusing.
   - 8 Synonym of irritating.

Unit 71

1. Add one word from the box to the correct place in each sentence.
   - even absolutely still quite
   - only especially a bit
   - I play tennis a lot in the summer.
   - especially
   - We couldn't play the match with ten players.
   - He lives in Italy, but speaks English most of the time.
   - The food is fantastic in that restaurant.
   - Max didn't like the film, but I thought it was good.
   - The last film was good, but this is better.
   - My English is getting better.

2. Complete the sentences in a suitable way.
   - There are too many cars on the roads, but I still drive to work.
   - I go swimming, even in
   - It was August, but the weather was really
   - The service is a bit but the food is really good.
   - She can't drive; she's only
   - By the end of the evening I was quite
   - I like her new boyfriend; he's extremely

REVIEW: LANGUAGE 193
Unit 72

Complete the crossword.

Across ——
3 She hasn’t ________ to the dentist for a year.
4 Have you ________ that book?
6 They ________ the bus to work this morning.
9 I ________ the books on the shelf.
11 I ________ these keys on the floor. Are they yours?
13 He ________ for eight hours last night.
14 I ________ her an email yesterday.
15 He ________ to post the letter.

Down ———
1 We ________ to the cinema on Saturday.
2 Have you ________ his new film?
3 She ________ some new jeans at the weekend.
5 Have you ________ your homework?
7 How long have you ________ her?
8 He ________ ten kilometres this morning.
10 I ________ the book was very good.
12 She ________ home at 8 o’clock this morning.
13 We ________ on the floor because there were no chairs.
14 I ________ all my money on holiday.

Unit 73

1 Make sentences from the words.
   ► morning / I / woke / this / early / up
   I woke up early this morning.
1  in / grew / I / up / a / village
2  you / day / why / sit / don’t / ?
3  find / I / address / out / must / their
4  over / street / the / fell / in / she
5  night / you / put / last / did / go / ?
6  light / on / could / the / you / turn / ?
7  look / in / up / dictionary / it / your
8  them / I / try / could / on / ?
2 Change the underlined words for a phrasal verb with the same meaning.

► Can I remove my jacket?  __________
1 I __________ smoking last year. __________
2 The price of flats is __________ all the time. __________
3 She lives in Paris but wants to __________ to Rome. __________
4 The plane couldn’t __________ the ground and start flying. __________
5 We have a good relationship. __________
6 When I finish this I can __________ Exercise 2. __________

Unit 74

Put the words and phrases in the correct place in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the morning</th>
<th>midnight</th>
<th>Monday morning</th>
<th>December</th>
<th>my birthday</th>
<th>breakfast</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>midnight</td>
<td>midnight</td>
<td>the sixth of March</td>
<td>half past five</td>
<td>the afternoon</td>
<td>the 21st century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summer</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>three o’clock</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>the weekend</td>
<td>Friday evening</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In  __________
At  __________
On  __________

Unit 75

1 Read the text, then complete the sentences.

Seven years ago I left California and went to live in Spain. I already spoke Spanish very well, and I got a job as a receptionist in a tourist hotel near Malaga. I stayed in one of the rooms and looked for somewhere to live. I found a nice apartment near the town and I worked at the hotel for two years. After that I got a similar job, this time in a large hotel on the Algarve in the south of Portugal. I met a Spanish man at the hotel – he also worked there – and six months later we got married. We bought a small house near the hotel and one month ago, I found out that we were going to have a baby. We are now preparing a room for him – or her.

► I already spoke Spanish before I __________.  __________
1 I stayed in one of the rooms in the hotel until I __________.
2 I met a Spanish man after I __________.
3 I’ve lived in the house I bought since I __________.
4 I’ve lived in Portugal for __________.
5 Soon I’m going to __________.
6 At the moment we’re __________.
2 Put the phrases in the correct place on the line.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>last night</th>
<th>tomorrow evening</th>
<th>today</th>
<th>last week</th>
<th>next Monday</th>
<th>in ten days’ time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yesterday afternoon</td>
<td>this evening</td>
<td>tomorrow morning</td>
<td>two days ago</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 2 3 4 5 today 6 7 8 9

Past Present Future

Unit 76

1 Put the letters in order to make prepositions.

1 wolbe ________ 2 revo ________ 3 stap ________ 4 rean ________ 5 wodn ________ 6 scoras ________ 7 tenx ot ________ 8 toin ________ 9 tou fo ________ 10 sitpepo ________ 11 tebnewe ________ 12 gorhhtu ________

2 Which words from Exercise 1 can go in sentences 1 and 2 below?

1 I live ________ Jack.
2 Jo ran ________ the park.

3 Write the words in the correct columns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the world</th>
<th>the coast</th>
<th>school</th>
<th>the table</th>
<th>my town</th>
<th>the wall</th>
<th>home</th>
<th>Germany</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the world</td>
<td></td>
<td>at</td>
<td>on</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 77

1 Match 1 – 8 with a – i.

1 We went to Rio last year because ______
2 We decided to go in September because of ______
3 My mother decided to come and ______
4 Our Brazilian friends weren’t working, so ______
5 They came to the airport to ______
6 We had a week in Rio, and ______
7 We drove to São Paulo in order to ______
8 The food was great, and ______
9 There are still many things to see, so ______

a we loved the street life too.
b I think we’ll go back next year.
c we wanted to visit some friends.
d see the countryside.
e we spent a lot of time together.
f we went to São Paio as well.
g the weather; it’s cooler then.
h meet us.
i we also took her sister.
2 Complete the text with a link word/phrase from the box.

because  too ✔  as well  because of  also  to  so

My cousin, Peter, did French at university, and he studied a little Chinese ● too ●
He first became interested in the language (1) ● because ● his girlfriend, Hua. She's half
Chinese, but she's lived in Britain for most of her life. Peter moved to Beijing two years ago
(2) ● to study Chinese. Hua went there last year and got a job in a bank, and he
(3) ● got a job, teaching English. They loved living there (4) ● the
people were so friendly and life was great. Last month, Hua found a new job in Hong Kong,
(5) ● Peter decided to leave China and go there (6) ● . He's sad
about leaving China, but I'm sure he'll go back and see his friends in the future.

Unit 78

1 Write sentences using phrases from each column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If</th>
<th>When</th>
<th>While</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you get to the airport, ✓</td>
<td>you're travelling on a long flight,</td>
<td>you can choose your seat on the plane,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you're waiting for the flight,</td>
<td>you feel ill during the flight,</td>
<td>you lose your passport on holiday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you get off,</td>
<td>you sit near the front where it's quiet,</td>
<td>tell the airline staff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you feel ill during the flight,</td>
<td>you sit in the departure lounge,</td>
<td>go to the embassy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you lose your passport on holiday.</td>
<td>you don't leave anything on the plane,</td>
<td>sit near the front where it's quiet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>always wear comfortable clothes.</td>
<td>go to the check-in desk. ✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

► When you get to the airport, go to the check-in desk.

1
2
3
4
5
6

2 Complete the text with words from the box.

after that  first of all  finally  while  if  then  when ✓

► When ● I'm getting ready to go out for the evening, (1) ● I have a shower. And
(2) ● I'm in the shower, I often listen to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my hair,
too. (3) ● I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really loves
that!) (4) ● , I decide what to wear: usually a shirt and some casual trousers. And then
(5) ● , I look in the mirror before I go out to see (6) ● everything's OK. I want to
look my best!
Unit 79

1 Circle the correct word or phrase.
   ◮ What time do you have lunch?
   1 Did you have a wash before dinner?
   2 We always have a/the swim in the lake in the afternoon.
   3 Have you got / Did you have a good weekend?
   4 Do / Have you got any children?
   5 We hadn’t / didn’t have the same office last year.
   6 We had a great time / weather in Italy last summer.
   7 Can I have rest / a rest? I’m really tired.
   8 I had / was hungry, so I had / had got dinner.

2 One word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.
   ◮ It was sunny at midday, so we had lunch in the garden.
   1 We had a / the for ten minutes in the middle of the lesson.
   2 We had something / eat at the beach.
   3 My sister got blonde hair.
   4 I was hot, so I had a / before dinner.
   5 We had a / day at work. I hate my job!
   6 Have a lovely in the Caribbean!
   7 I’d like to go on holiday, but I don’t have any money.
   8 On Sunday, we just had a and did nothing.

Unit 80

1 What meaning does the verb get have in each sentence? Write the number of the sentence next to the correct verb.
   ❯ arrive obtain buy travel by receive become

   1 Where do you get your fruit and vegetables?
   2 Are you trying to get a new job?
   3 Do you get tired in hot weather?
   4 How many text messages do you get every day?
   5 Are you getting taller?
   6 What did you get for your last birthday?
   7 Where did you get the shoes you’re wearing?
   8 How often do you get the train to school or work?
   9 What time did you get home last night?

2 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 1, or ask another student.
### Vocabulary building

All the words in **bold** are in the units.

#### 1 Verbs and nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>advise</td>
<td>advice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>act</td>
<td>actor, actress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advertise</td>
<td>advert/advertisement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agree</td>
<td>agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apologize</td>
<td>apology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrange</td>
<td>arrangement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach</td>
<td>attachment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>beginning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>believe</td>
<td>belief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>building, builder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>choice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>climb</td>
<td>climbing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collect</td>
<td>collection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compose</td>
<td>composer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance</td>
<td>dance, dancing, dancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deliver</td>
<td>delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depart</td>
<td>departure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>design</td>
<td>designer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disagree</td>
<td>disagreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discuss</td>
<td>discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drawing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>driver, driving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>educate</td>
<td>education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enter</td>
<td>entrance, entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>examine</td>
<td>exam/examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explain</td>
<td>explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>feeling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flight, flying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>growth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hate</td>
<td>hatred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insure</td>
<td>insurance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite</td>
<td>invitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage</td>
<td>manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meaning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>move</td>
<td>movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>own</td>
<td>owner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>park</td>
<td>parking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>payment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perform</td>
<td>performance, performer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit</td>
<td>permission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>preference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>print</td>
<td>printer, printout, printing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronounce</td>
<td>pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>reading, reader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recommend</td>
<td>recommendation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refuse</td>
<td>refusal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>report</td>
<td>report, reporter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reserve</td>
<td>reservation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respond</td>
<td>response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>riding, rider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>run, runner, running</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serve</td>
<td>service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>shooting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sign</td>
<td>signature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>singer, singing, song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smoke</td>
<td>smoke, smoking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spell</td>
<td>spelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study</td>
<td>study, student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suggest</td>
<td>suggestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swim, swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>teacher, teaching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thinking, thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travel</td>
<td>travelling, travel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>walk, walking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wash</td>
<td>wash, washing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weigh</td>
<td>weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>winner</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Adjectives and Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>angry</td>
<td>anger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>able, unable</td>
<td>ability, inability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attractive</td>
<td>attraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>beauty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloudy</td>
<td>cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold</td>
<td>comfort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfortable,</td>
<td>crowd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncomfortable</td>
<td>danger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crowded</td>
<td>difference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>dirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>different</td>
<td>east</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirty</td>
<td>electricity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eastern</td>
<td>excitement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electric, electrical</td>
<td>fame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excited, exciting</td>
<td>fog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famous</td>
<td>friend, friendship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foggy</td>
<td>geography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friendly, unfriendly</td>
<td>luck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geographical</td>
<td>happiness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lucky, unlucky</td>
<td>health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy, unhappy</td>
<td>history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>healthy, unhealthy</td>
<td>humidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>historic, historical</td>
<td>hunger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humid</td>
<td>ice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>illness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>icy</td>
<td>industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ill</td>
<td>intelligence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>industrial</td>
<td>kindness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intelligent</td>
<td>laziness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind, unkind</td>
<td>length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lazy</td>
<td>mad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>medical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mad</td>
<td>musical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medical</td>
<td>mistaken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musical</td>
<td>noisy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mistaken</td>
<td>northern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noisy</td>
<td>possible, impossible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>northern</td>
<td>painful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possible, impossible</td>
<td>peaceful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>painful</td>
<td>personal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peaceful</td>
<td>political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personal</td>
<td>religious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>political</td>
<td>sad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>religious</td>
<td>safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sad</td>
<td>scientific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safe</td>
<td>southern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scientific</td>
<td>strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>southern</td>
<td>sunny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strong</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunny</td>
<td>various</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
<td>violent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>various</td>
<td>weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violent</td>
<td>western</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weak</td>
<td>wide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>western</td>
<td>windy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wide</td>
<td>wooden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windy</td>
<td>young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wooden</td>
<td>madness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young</td>
<td>medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>madness</td>
<td>music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medicine</td>
<td>mistake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music</td>
<td>noise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mistake</td>
<td>north</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noise</td>
<td>possibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>north</td>
<td>pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possibility</td>
<td>peace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peace</td>
<td>person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person</td>
<td>politics, politician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politics, politician</td>
<td>religion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>religion</td>
<td>sadness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadness</td>
<td>safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safety</td>
<td>science, scientist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>science, scientist</td>
<td>south</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>south</td>
<td>strength</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strength</td>
<td>sun, sunshine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sun, sunshine</td>
<td>truth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truth</td>
<td>variety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variety</td>
<td>violence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violence</td>
<td>weakness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weakness</td>
<td>west</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>west</td>
<td>width</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>width</td>
<td>wind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind</td>
<td>wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wood</td>
<td>youth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Verbs and nouns with the same form

answer     brush     call     cash     change     charge     chat     check     circle     cook     copy     cost
cough      cut       delay     divorce    download    drink     email     end      fall      guide     hate     hope
jump       label     laugh    look       love       mark      matter    microwave name     need      offer     phone
post       pull      push     queue     rain       repair    reply     request    research    rest      ring      share
shave      snow      start    stay       taste      text      tour      use       visit      waste     work

4 Nouns, verbs and adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>confusion</td>
<td>confuse</td>
<td>confusing, confused</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>death</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>dead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employment</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>employed, unemployed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoyment</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>enjoyable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excitement</td>
<td>excite</td>
<td>exciting, excited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>help</td>
<td>helpful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heating</td>
<td>heat</td>
<td>hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interest</td>
<td>interest</td>
<td>interested, interesting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knowledge</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>known, unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
<td>locate</td>
<td>located</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marriage</td>
<td>marry/marry</td>
<td>married</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>organization</td>
<td>organize</td>
<td>organized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pollution</td>
<td>pollute</td>
<td>polluted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rent</td>
<td>rent</td>
<td>rested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retirement</td>
<td>retire</td>
<td>retired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>asleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speech, speaking, speaker</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surprise</td>
<td>surprise</td>
<td>surprised, surprising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writing, writer</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worry</td>
<td>worry</td>
<td>worried, worrying</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Verbs and adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>annoy</td>
<td>annoyed, annoying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boil</td>
<td>boiled, boiling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bore</td>
<td>bored, boring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean</td>
<td>clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close</td>
<td>closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complete</td>
<td>complete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correct</td>
<td>correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>empty</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>frozen, freezing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frighten</td>
<td>frightened, frightening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>include</td>
<td>included</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irritate</td>
<td>irritated, irritating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open</td>
<td>open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relax</td>
<td>relaxed, relaxing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tidy</td>
<td>tidy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tire</td>
<td>tired, tiring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake up</td>
<td>awake</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Common irregular verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>had been</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>froze</td>
<td>frozen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overtake</td>
<td>overtook</td>
<td>overtook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shake</td>
<td>shook</td>
<td>shaken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shone</td>
<td>shone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spell</td>
<td>spell/spelled</td>
<td>spell/spelled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake (up)</td>
<td>woke (up)</td>
<td>woke (up)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Answer key
Answer key

Unit 1
1 two hundred
2 three hundred and forty
3 twenty-two
4 42,500
5 one thousand two hundred
6 two thousand three hundred and fifty
2 1 eight
2 twenty
3 sixty-seven
4 fifty
5 a/hundred and nineteen
6 two hundred and forty-four
7 a/hundred thousand
8 five thousand and fifty
9 eleven thousand three hundred and one
3 1 about a/hundred euros
2 about ten students
3 about thirty years
4 about five hundred
5 about two thousand
6 about eighty people
7 about two hundred and fifty thousand
8 about a/hundred million

Unit 2
1 1 nine fifteen
2 ten twenty-five
3 three thirty-five
4 eleven forty-five
5 three forty-five
6 seven twenty
7 two thirty
8 four forty
2 1 quarter past seven
2 half past nine
3 twenty-five to twelve
4 ten to four
5 twenty-five past eight
6 three minutes past one
7 quarter to three
8 seventeen minutes past four
4 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
5 Answers from a British person
1 They open at nine a.m.
2 No, they don't.
3 They close at half past five in the afternoon, and at seven p.m. on Thursdays.
4 They open at about eleven in the morning.
5 They close at different times. Some close at about midnight.
6 They open at nine a.m. and close at half past five in the afternoon.

Unit 3
1 1 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday
2 spring, summer, autumn, winter
3 January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December
2 1 Tuesday
2 September
3 summer
4 December
5 Saturday
3 Answers from a British person
1 September.
2 I like spring because it's light and the trees and plants start to grow.
3 Friday, because it's nearly the weekend.
4 I go and see my family and we have a big lunch together.
5 May 1st is a public holiday for workers, and in March or April we have Easter Sunday.
5 1 third
2 twentieth
3 fifth
4 first
5 eighth
6 1 April the tenth, or The tenth of April.
2 April the eleventh, or The eleventh of April.
3 March the fourth, or The fourth of March.
4 April the sixth, or The sixth of April.
5 April the seventeenth, or The seventeenth of April.
6 March the thirty-first, or The thirty-first of March.
7 March the twenty-first, or The twenty-first of March.
8 April the twenty-third, or The twenty-third of April.
7 1 The third of February, or February the third.
2 July the fourth, or The fourth of July.
3 The tenth of December, or December the tenth.
4 August the twelfth, or The twelfth of August.
5 The fifteenth of January, or January the fifteenth.
6 Nineteen eighty-nine.
7 The twenty-first of May, or May the twenty-first.
### Unit 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Britain</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Africa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>The Middle East</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Central</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Asia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Far</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Australasia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>South</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Unit 5

1. The thirtieth of November.
2. The second of April.
3. The twenty-second of April.
4. The thirtieth of November.

### Unit 7

1. I think he's in the wrong class.
2. They are the right answer.

### Unit 8

1. I'm a teacher.
2. I'm single.
3. I'm 30.

### Unit 10

1. I'm a teacher.
2. I'm single.
3. I'm 30.

---

206 ANSWER KEY
6 1 I was born in 1989.
2 We spend a lot of time together.
3 My girlfriend is older than me.
4 There are six of us in my family.
5 I am the youngest in my family.
6 I've got an older/younger brother and a younger/older sister.
7 Answers from a Turkish person
1 There are six people in my family.
2 1963.
3 I've got one sister and two brothers. My sister's older than me and my two brothers are younger than me.
4 I spend a lot of time with my sister because she's fun and she lives near me.
5 No. We all live in our own houses but very close to each other.

Unit 11
1 lie down 5 sit down
2 fall over 6 get on
3 ride 7 run
4 climb 8 stand up
1 stand 6 jumped
2 walk 7 rode
3 climb 8 ran, fell
4 dance 9 got, got
5 lie
1 carry 5 touch 9 hold
2 turn off 6 drop 10 push
3 put down 7 pick up 11 shut
4 close 8 break 12 open
1 touch a bicycle 1, push a bicycle 2
2 pick up a TV, turn on a TV 1
3 break a bottle 1, open a bottle 2
4 pull your hair 1, touch your hair 1
5 turn off a radio 1, hold a radio 1
6 drop a ruler 1, break a ruler 2
7 carry a door 2, close a door 1
8 pick up a baby 2, hold a baby 2

Unit 12
1 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 T 9 T
10 T 11 T 12 F 13 T 14 F
2 1 wrist 5 shoulder
2 stomach 6 eyes
3 neck 7 bottom
4 finger
3 1 chin 6 face
2 stomach 7 nose
3 chest 8 bottom
4 tooth/teeth 9 waist

Unit 13
1 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 F 8 F
2 1 height 4 weighs
2 good-looking 5 fat
3 slim 6 beautiful
4 1 I've got medium-length; short, curly hair. or I've got medium-length, short, curly hair.
2 Her hair is short, blonde; light brown, and wavy. or Her hair is short, blonde, light brown; and wavy.
3 My sister's hair is straight; long, and curly. or My sister's hair is short, long, and curly.
4 My brother's got short, grey; black hair, and a moustache. or My brother's got short, grey, black hair, and a moustache.
5 My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair. or My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair.
5 1 medium-length, short
2 blonde, black, brown, grey
3 straight, wavy, curly
4 beard, moustache
5 brown
6 Answers from a German person
1 It's short...
2 It's red.
3 It's straight.
4 I've got a beard.
5 No, my eyes are blue.
7 1 b 2 e 3 i 4 h 5 c 6 f 7 a 8 g
8 Answers from an Argentinian person
1 Pablo (my nephew).
2 Ester (my mother).
3 Ezequiel (my nephew).
4 Berta (my grandmother).
5 Pedro (my father).
6 Sol (my niece).
7 Carlos (my mother's 5th husband).
10 The police are looking for Y.
11 The other man is in his mid-forties/is middle-aged, short and overweight, with short grey hair and a beard.

Unit 14
1 1 funny 5 clever
2 quiet 6 friendly
3 relaxed 7 laugh
4 nice
2 1 unfriendly 5 funny
2 intelligent 6 serious
3 horrible 7 relaxed
4 stupid 8 kind

ANSWER KEY 207
3 1 serious
2 are, fun, horrible/unfriendly
3 What, kind, clever/intelligent
4 really friendly, really nice, really funny, really interesting.
5 1 T 2 T 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 F 8 F
6 Answers from a British person
1 I'm very sporty.
2 I don't think I'm very relaxed.
3 I'm tidy at work but untidy at home.
4 I'm hardworking most of the time.
5 I'm quiet but I think I'm quite sociable as well.
6 Yes, I think I am.

Unit 15
1 1 They had a baby last year.
2 They split up in January.
3 We have a very good relationship.
4 How did you get to know her?
5 They were together for three years.
6 I went out with him for six months.
2 1 have 5 ex-
2 together 6 divorced, partner/
3 couple 7 girlfriend, get
4 out, up
3 1 D 2 D 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 S
4 Answers from an Hungarian person
1 My wife.
2 Seven years.
3 At a friend's Christmas party.
4 We have mutual friends.
5 We live together.
6 Because we love each other. We're interested in similar things, and we want the same things in life.

Unit 16
1 1 I'm tired. 5 I'm boiling.
2 I'm nervous. 6 I'm ill. or I feel ill.
3 I'm thirsty. 7 or I don't feel well.
4 I'm hungry.
2 1 matter; feel or'm 4 boiling.
2 tired 5 nervous
3 matter; freezing 6 What's; well
4 1 angry 6 frightened
2 worried 7 unhappy
3 upset 8 embarrassed
4 scared 9 excited
5 surprised
5 1 angry 6 happy
2 surprised 7 upset or sad or unhappy
3 worried 8 frightened or scared
4 excited 9 love

Unit 17
1 1 I get dressed before breakfast.
2 I have breakfast at 8 a.m.
3 I leave home at 8.30 a.m.
4 I finish work at 6 p.m.
5 I have dinner with my family.
6 I go to bed at 11 o'clock.
7 I sleep seven hours a night.
2 1 get 4 get
2 have 5 have
3 leave 6 go
3 Answers from a Japanese person
1 I get dressed before breakfast.
2 Yes, I do sometimes.
3 In the sitting room.
4 At about 8.15.
5 At about 8.50.
6 My family.
7 At around 11.30.
8 About 8 hours.
5 do the shopping once or twice a week
stay in go shopping
play tennis go to the gym
come round at the weekend
go for a walk
6 1 go 6 late
2 round 7 at
3 play 8 gym
4 out or shopping 9 do, early
5 During, in 10 see
7 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 D
8 1 Haruko gets up early every day.
2 Hiro hardly ever goes to the gym.
3 Haruko always stays in.
4 Hiro studies all day.
5 Haruko never has a shower in the morning.
6 Hiro occasionally goes to the cinema.
9 Answers from a British person
1 True. I always have a shower before breakfast.
2 False. I occasionally go out on Friday evening.
3 False. I sometimes listen to music in the evening.
4 False. I never study on Sunday.
5 False. I often watch TV at the weekend.
6 False. I sometimes work in the evening.
7 True. I usually go shopping on Monday.
8 False. I never go to the gym after dinner.
**Unit 18**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jacket</td>
<td>T-shirt</td>
<td>trousers</td>
<td>dress</td>
<td>coat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jumper</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>jeans</td>
<td>sweater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raincoat</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Give me the sock.**
2. Not possible.
3. I've got one pair of sandals.
4. Not possible.
5. She's wearing my scarf.
6. Where is my glove?
7. Not possible.
8. Not possible.

**7 Answers from a German person**

1. Light grey jeans, a blue T-shirt and black shoes.
2. I normally wear casual clothes at the weekend.
3. No, I only wear leather shoes.
4. I wear sunglasses in summer.
5. I wear a hat and a scarf in winter when it's cold. I wear a watch daily.

**Unit 19**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>loose</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>smart</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casual</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 uncomfortable</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>casual</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>loose</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**8 Answers from a Turkish person**

1. No, I don't.
2. I buy clothes about four times a year.
3. I bought some very nice walking shoes.
4. Yes, I always do.
5. Yes. I never buy clothes without trying them on.
6. I usually pay by debit card.

**Unit 20**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>room</td>
<td>desk</td>
<td>help</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>card</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>lovely</td>
<td>nice</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**9 Answers from a German person**

1. Light grey jeans, a blue T-shirt and black shoes.
2. I normally wear casual clothes at the weekend.
3. No, I only wear leather shoes.
4. I wear sunglasses in summer.
5. I wear a hat and a scarf in winter when it's cold. I wear a watch daily.

**Unit 21**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>room</td>
<td>desk</td>
<td>help</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>lovely</td>
<td>nice</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>card</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Unit 22**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Answers from a Greek person**

1. Very rarely.
2. Yes it is. I really like talking on the phone.
3. Yes, most of the time it is.
4. It's about one euro.
5. Yes, they're cheap.
6. No, women earn less than men.

**Unit 23**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Answers from a Turkish person**

1. No, I don't.
2. I buy clothes about four times a year.
3. I bought some very nice walking shoes.
4. Yes, I always do.
5. Yes. I never buy clothes without trying them on.
6. I usually pay by debit card.

**Unit 24**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Answers from a Greek person**

1. Very rarely.
2. Yes it is. I really like talking on the phone.
3. Yes, most of the time it is.
4. It's about one euro.
5. Yes, they're cheap.
6. No, women earn less than men.

**Unit 25**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Answers from a Turkish person**

1. No, I don't.
2. I buy clothes about four times a year.
3. I bought some very nice walking shoes.
4. Yes, I always do.
5. Yes. I never buy clothes without trying them on.
6. I usually pay by debit card.

**Unit 26**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Answers from a Greek person**

1. Very rarely.
2. Yes it is. I really like talking on the phone.
3. Yes, most of the time it is.
4. It's about one euro.
5. Yes, they're cheap.
6. No, women earn less than men.

**Unit 27**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Answers from a Turkish person**

1. No, I don't.
2. I buy clothes about four times a year.
3. I bought some very nice walking shoes.
4. Yes, I always do.
5. Yes. I never buy clothes without trying them on.
6. I usually pay by debit card.

**Unit 28**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Answers from a Greek person**

1. Very rarely.
2. Yes it is. I really like talking on the phone.
3. Yes, most of the time it is.
4. It's about one euro.
5. Yes, they're cheap.
6. No, women earn less than men.

**Unit 29**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Answers from a Turkish person**

1. No, I don't.
2. I buy clothes about four times a year.
3. I bought some very nice walking shoes.
4. Yes, I always do.
5. Yes. I never buy clothes without trying them on.
6. I usually pay by debit card.

**Unit 30**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Answers from a Greek person**

1. Very rarely.
2. Yes it is. I really like talking on the phone.
3. Yes, most of the time it is.
4. It's about one euro.
5. Yes, they're cheap.
6. No, women earn less than men.
Unit 22
1 1 hurts 7 flue
2 've got 8 Has
3 feel 9 've got
4 've got 10 Has
5 feel 11 's
6 hurts 12 haven't got
2 1 cough 5 stomach-ache
2 temperature 6 sick
3 hurt 7 flu
4 matter; well 8 throat
4 1 You should go to the chemist's.
2 Go and lie down for a while.
3 Go and see your GP doctor. OR Go and see
   your GP doctor.
4 Stay in bed and don't do anything.
5 Go to bed for a day or two days.
6 You should go and see your doctor.
7 You shouldn't go to work today.
8 Lie down for a while.
5 Possible answers
   1 You should go and lie down for a while.
   2 You should go to the pharmacy.
   3 You should stay in bed for a day or two.
   4 You should go and lie down for a while.
   5 You should go and see your GP.

Unit 23
1 1 cotton wool 4 antiseptic 7 cream
2 tissues 5 plasters 8 medicine
3 correct 6 pharmacist
2 1 a sore throat
2 take these tablets
3 for toothache, please
4 wool
5 some plasters, please
6 for your finger
7 this medicine -- it's very good
8 tablet three times a day
9 cream
10 help you

Unit 24
1 1 Pork, because it's a meat.
2 Lamb, because it isn't from a pig.
3 Tuna, because it's a fish.
4 Salmon, because it's a fish.
5 Cow, because it's only an animal.
2 1 beef 3 tuna 5 crab
2 pork 4 duck
3 1 pork 3 salmon 5 bacon
2 lamb 4 tuna 6 chicken
4 Your own answers

Unit 25
1 grapes, melon, lemon, avocado, strawberry,
   cherry, pineapple, pear, orange, peach, apple
2 1 sweet 5 small
2 bitter 6 good
3 red 7 sweet
4 green 8 big
4 1 carrot 5 beans
2 onion 6 courgette
3 pepper 7 tomato
4 cabbage 8 garlic
5 I F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 F
6 Your own answers

Unit 26
1 1 ✓ 7 ✓
2 ✓ 8 bread or some
3 butter or some bread
   butter 9 ✓
4 ✓ 10 rice or some rice
5 cheese or some cheese
   cheese 11 jam or some
   jam 6 ✓ 12 ✓
2 1 milk 7 butter
2 some cheese 8 rice
3 sugar 9 a large bar of chocolate
4 biscuits 10 noodles
5 some olive oil
6 six eggs
4 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 F 8 T
9 F 10 T
5 1 box 6 packet
2 jar 7 grams
3 bottle 8 packet
4 carton/bottle 9 litre/bottle/carton
5 kilo 10 bottle/litre
7 1 got, many 3 Could/Can, just
2 much, else, that's 4 like, ripe
8 1 Could I have twelve eggs, please?
2 I'd like some sugar, please.
3 Have you got any ham?
4 How much cheese would you like?
5 That's just over half a kilo.
6 How many oranges would you like?

Unit 27
1 1 roll, baguette, sandwich, toasted sandwich
2 cappuccino, tea, orange juice, espresso, black coffee
2 1 bread 6 couple
2 1 sandwich 7 white
3 chocolate 8 white
4 coffee 9 have
5 take away
3 1 I'd like two coffees, please.
2 To drink here or take away?
3 To drink here. And a toasted ham sandwich.
4 OK, it will be a couple of minutes.
5 Have a seat, please.

Unit 28
1 1 fork 9 wine
2 spoon 10 red
3 napkin 11 white
4 plate 12 salt
5 bowl 13 black pepper
6 bottle 14 bottles
7 mineral water 15 oil
8 glasses 16 vinegar
2 Answers from an Argentinian person
On restaurant tables in my country we usually or sometimes have salt, pepper, napkins, oil and vinegar.
We don't usually have a bottle of mineral water, a bowl or a glass of red wine.
4 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 T
9 F 10 T
5 1 cream 5 course
2 steak 6 sauce
3 salad 7 dish
4 soup 8 boiled
6 Your own answers
8 1 some more 5 of course
2 to order 6 the
3 another 7 I'll
4 meal 8 certainly
9 1 have 6 dessert
2 how 7 'll
3 course 8 bill
4 sparkling 9 sure/certainly
5 some

Unit 29
1 1 How many stops is it to the railway station?
2 Excuse me, which bus do I get to the school?
3 How long does it take to the railway station?
4 Does the 24 stop outside the post office?
5 Where do I go off for the cinema?
6 Does the 24 go to the park?
7 How often does the 24 run?
8 Which is the last stop for the 167?
2 1 Five 5 At the next stop
2 The 16 or the 24 6 No, it doesn't
3 About ten 7 Every ten minutes
4 Yes, it does 8 The railway station
3 1 stop 6 timetable
2 next/second 7 run
3 last/final 8 runs
4 get off 9 every
5 goes/runs 10 takes
4 Answers from a British person
1 Yes, at the end of the road.
2 The 8 and the 15.
3 They run about every 15 minutes.
4 I don't get the bus very often, but I sometimes get it to the town centre.
5 Four.
6 Five to ten minutes.

Unit 30
1 1 a slow train 4 the 7 o'clock train
2 get off the train 5 a seat
3 catch a train 6 at a (railway) station
2 1 fare 5 last/next
2 carriage 6 waited/await
3 missed 7 timetable
4 get/take 8 journey
3 1 advance 5 office
2 return 6 train
3 direct 7 seat
4 London
4 1 change 5 to
2 leaves 6 single
3 platform 7 advance
4 gets

5 Answers from a German person
1 A month ago.
2 I went to Berlin to see friends.
3 I paid €75.50 for the ticket.
4 Yes, I always do, because you get reduced prices.
5 It was a direct journey from Hannover to Berlin.

Unit 31
1 1 Excuse me. How do I get to the bank?
2 Go along here and turn left.
3 Excuse me. Is there a bank near here?
4 It's the third turning on the right.
5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the bank?
6 Turn left into Foster Road.
2 1 turning 5 going
2 much 6 on
3 left/right/corner 7 here
4 me 8 way
3 1 get 2 straight 3 turning 4 left 5 much
2 1 Excuse 2 near 3 along 4 take 5 turning
6 right 7 opposite 8 Thanks
3 3
1 way 2 Turn 3 into 4 corner 5 right

Unit 32
1 1 station 5 crossing
2 road 6 park
3 camera 7 jam
4 sign
2 1 station 6 speed
2 main 7 roundabout
3 sign 8 traffic
4 park 9 pavement
5 crossing 10 junction
4 1 motorway 4 speed limit
2 rush hour 5 accident
3 overtake 6 a quiet road
5 1 busy 3 far
2 lane, overtake 4 take, drive
6 Answers from a Turkish person
1 Three.
2 120 kph.
3 Not speed cameras, but police radar.
4 No. We drive on the right, the steering wheel is on the left.
5 9 a.m. and 6 p.m.

Unit 33
1 1 f 2 h 3 j 4 c 5 b 6 e 7 i 8 g 9 a
2 1 parking/entry/exit/vacancies
2 in/out
3 do not disturb/ring bell
4 parking/entry/exit/vacancies
5 in/out
6 do not disturb/ring bell
7 declare

Unit 34
1 1 Porto Alegre 6 Colombia
2 Brasilia 7 Rio de Janeiro
3 Amazon 8 Mountain
4 Pico de Neblina 9 Inland
5 Argentina 10 coast
2 Possible answers
1 It's the longest river in Brazil.
2 It's the highest mountain in Brazil.
3 It's the capital.
4 It's a town in the south.
5 It has a border with the south of Brazil.
6 It's a famous city on the coast.
3 Answers from a Greek person
1 Athens. It's in the north/centre of Greece.
2 Thessaloniki, Patras and Corinth.
3 Yes, it has borders with Albania, FYROM (Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia), Bulgaria and Turkey.
5 The islands.
7 The Parthenon and the ancient theatre of the Acropolis.

Unit 35
1 1 bridge 5 park
2 square 6 mosque
3 castle 7 building
4 cathedral
2 1 temple 5 park
2 bridge 6 statue, square
3 market 7 castle, palace
4 museum 8 place
4 Size: a small village, a large city, a medium-sized town.
Location: on the coast, on the River Duero, south-west of the capital
Population: over two million, just under 50,000, about 3,000
Interesting facts: famous for historic buildings, an industrial town
5 1 of 5 population
  2 in 6 under
  3 of 7 industrial
  4 on 8 historic

6 Answer from a British person
Bath is a medium-sized town, 170 km west of London, in the south-west of England.
It’s on the River Avon. The population is just under 100,000. It is a famous tourist place
in England, with lots of historic buildings, including a famous abbey (like a cathedral) and many museums.
7 1 no 4 no 7 no
  2 yes 5 yes
  3 yes 6 yes
8 1 cosmopolitan 4 nightlife
  2 dangerous 5 crowded/busy
  3 do 6 polluted

9 Answers from a Hungarian person (who lives in Budapest)
1 It’s pretty safe, although we had some riots recently, but these are very unusual.
2 It’s a big city, and there’s a lot to do: there are cinemas, restaurants, cafes, shopping
  centres, parks and museums – whatever you’re interested in.
3 It’s a very busy city. There are two million people living there, and thousands
  commute there for work.
4 There are many popular clubs, bars, all-night cafes, late cinemas, concerts and other cultural events.
5 Yes, it is.
6 Some people think it’s noisy and dirty, but I love it because it’s got everything.

Unit 36
1 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 F 9 T
2 1 valley, hill 5 own, dog, horse
  2 grass 6 crops, grow
  3 few trees 7 farmers
  4 fields

3 Answers from an Argentinian person
1 Neither, I live in the city centre.
2 Yes, there is a natural lake close to my home.
3 No, I can’t.
4 Yes, they are on the pavement.
5 There is a football pitch.
6 No.
7 Wheat, soy and corn.
8 Yes, I know a few.
9 1 D 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 D 8 S

6 I often buy flowers.
2 I love the countryside.
3 I’m very healthy.
4 I see lots of birds in my area.
5 Our public transport is wonderful.
6 I’m often alone in the evening.
7 I eat fresh fruit every day.
8 I never feel lonely.

7 Answers from a Japanese person
1 False. I don’t buy flowers.
2 True.
3 True.
4 True, but not the pretty ones. I only see pigeons and crows.
5 True.
6 False. My family is normally with me.
7 False. I only eat fresh fruit a few times a week.
8 True.

Unit 37
1 1 butcher’s 4 deli
  2 baker’s 5 chemist’s
  3 paper shop 6 newsagent’s
2 Possible answers
1 sandwiches, bread, coffee, cheese, ham
  2 medicine, aspirins, soap, shampoo
  3 fruit, vegetables, meat, fish, bread, books
  4 newspapers, cigarettes, chocolates
  5 bread, cakes
  6 CDs, DVDs
4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 F
5 1 shopping 4 convenient
  2 prefer 5 deliver
  3 queue 6 get

6 Answers from a British person
1 We usually do the shopping on Saturday morning.
2 I prefer small shops, but I have to use the supermarket a lot.
3 Yes, often.
4 Yes, they are.
5 One or two of them deliver, but I always carry things home myself.
6 At the market.
### Unit 38

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>mirror</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>bidet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>desk</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>wardrobe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>blanket</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>towel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>bedside table</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>wardrobe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>mirror</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>bidet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>bath</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>blanket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>chest of drawers</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>sheet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>washbasin</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>towel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>toilet</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>shower</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Answers from an Argentinian person**

In my bedroom, there's a double bed, a bedside table, a chest of drawers, a chair and a wardrobe.

In my bathroom, there's a shower, a washbasin, a toilet, a long mirror and two towels.

5 1 do, brush 4 shave
2 have 5 washes, shampoo
3 puts on 6 tissues

6 1 a 2 a 3 a 4 a 5 a 6 an 7 a 8 a, a

**Your own answers**

### Unit 39

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>washing machine</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>frying pan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>dishwasher, sink</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>freezer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>saucers, cupboard</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>shelf/shelves</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>microwave, hob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>bin</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>tap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>oven</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>saucepan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 **Answers from a Turkish person**

My washing machine is in the bathroom.

4 1 shopping 6 puts
2 put (everything) away 7 takes
3 empty 8 cook
4 clean 9 washing-up
5 make 10 ironing

5 **Answers from a Greek person**

1 My partner.
2 I do.
3 I do.
4 I do.
5 My partner.
6 We both do.

### Unit 40

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>1 T 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 T</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 floor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2 carpet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>3 cushion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>4 radiator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>5 coffee table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>6 ceiling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 **Answers from a Japanese person**

1 We've got one large window and one small window in our living room.
2 No, we've got air conditioning.
3 We've got wooden floorboards and a tatami mat.
4 There are a few pictures on the walls.
5 On the ceiling.
6 We've got a large sofa, a dinner table, a TV, a cupboard and a few cushions.

### Unit 41

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>history 5</th>
<th>physics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>geography 6</td>
<td>maths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>biology 7</td>
<td>music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>design 8</td>
<td>literature</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 **PE/physical education**

1 ICT/information communication technology
2 Literature
3 Modern languages
4 RE/religious education
5 Chemistry
6 Art
### 3 Your own answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 6 Answers from a German person

1. Usually at the age of six, sometimes five.
2. We don’t have school uniforms in Germany.
3. At the age of ten.
4. It depends on the kind of school they are attending. The earliest is 15.
5. There are state schools and private schools. The majority of children go to state schools.

### 8 Answers from a Turkish person

1. They were 50 minutes.
2. Yes.
3. When I was eleven years old, I was in a special school and I had to pass an exam to get into it.
4. I took one exam with many sections like Turkish language, maths, science, geography, history and general knowledge.
5. Yes.

### Unit 43

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>A graduate</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Unfortunately</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8Sc</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3 Answers from a Greek person

1. Four years.
2. Two or three years.
3. About ten weeks.
4. About twelve weeks.
5. Yes, always.

### 4 Answers from a Japanese person

1. I’m a secretary.
2. My friend Helen is the head chef at the George Hotel.
3. I don’t know anyone who’s a hairdresser.
4. My mother is unemployed.
5. I don’t know anyone who’s retired.
6. My friend Carla is an English teacher.
7. My friend Dave is a pilot.
8. My father’s friend Mr Kitamura is a dentist.
9. My father and brother are businessmen.
10. Mr Karasawa is my boss.

### Unit 45

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hours a day</td>
<td>A factory</td>
<td>Office</td>
<td>Work for</td>
<td>Does he earn</td>
<td>She works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Answers from a British person

1. I’m a reporter.
2. I work for a local newspaper.
3. I work in an office, and I go out and talk to people.
4. I work very long hours, often 12 or 14 hours a day.

### Answer Key 215
4 1 does makes 5 organize organize
does makes 5
make meet
meet meeting 6 correct
2 correct 8 to
3 correct 8
to meet
meet 6 colleagues
colleagues 6
answer 7 discuss
answer 7 discuss
3 send/write 8 organize
organize 8
4 spend 9 clients
spend 9
5 making 10 have
making 10

Unit 46
1 screen 5 monitor
1 screen 5
2 mouse 6 keyboard
2 mouse 6
3 personal computer 7 disk
3 personal computer 7
disk
4 memory stick 8 webcam
memory stick 8
2 speaker 5 memory stick, disk
speaker 5
2 hard copies 6 mouse
2 hard copies 6
3 hard drive 7 mouse mat
hard drive 7
4 laptop 8 screen
laptop 8

3 Answers from a German person
1 I have an old PC and a new Mac.
2 Yes, I use my printer almost every day.
3 One of my computers is a laptop. I keep it
in the guest room.
4 Yes, I have photos of friends, family and
my holidays on the computer.
5 No, don’t have a webcam.

5 g 2 a 3 e 4 h 5 b 6 f 7 c

g 2 a 3 e 4 h 5 b 6 f 7 c
6 a 1 clicked 5 cut
1 clicked 5
clicked 5
2 beginning, end 6 save
2 beginning, end 6
3 make/save 7 open
make/save 7
don’t have a webcam.
4 did 8 middle
4 did 8

Unit 47
1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F
1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F
2 I must reply to Jean’s message.
3 Did you get/receive my message?
3 I received an email from Li today.
4 Have you checked your emails/messages?
4 Have you checked your emails/messages?
5 Please forward the attachment to John.
5 Please forward the attachment to John.
6 She sent Tia an email yesterday.

3 Answers from a Turkish person
1 Almost every day.
2 My colleagues, family and friends.
3 Commercial, healthy life emails.
4 Yes they do. They send me pictures,
poems and jokes.
5 Yes.
6 Answers from a Turkish person
1 Yes it is.
2 I like both.
3 Istanbul.
4 Yes. I like swimming.
5 Yes.
6 Yes.
7 Yes.

6 Answers from a Greek person
1 annaingreece@yahoo.com
2 Very rarely.
3 It’s www.in.gr
4 Google.
5 No.
6 I use the Internet almost every day.
7 No, never.
8 Yes, I download it onto my PC.
9 I use Google.

Unit 48
1 A 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A
1 A 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A
2 I hate chocolate.
2 They don’t like doing homework very
much.
3 He doesn’t like speaking English very
much.
4 I quite like shopping.
5 She doesn’t like driving.
6 I think tennis is OK.
7 I really like going out with friends.
8 She loves watching sport.

3 Answers from a German person
1 I love watching TV.
2 I really like studying English.
3 I love driving.
4 I don’t like shopping for clothes.
5 I like cleaning the house.
6 I quite like writing emails.
7 I like talking on the phone.
8 I love going to the cinema.

4 I enjoy watching TV.
2 I’m not interested in politics.
3 My favourite film is ‘Tootsie’.
4 She prefers reading to writing.
5 It’s a fantastic boss.
6 Was the party good fun?
7 It’s a boring programme.
8 Are you keen on tennis?

5 1 fun 5 keen
1 fun 5
2 prefer 6 enjoy
2 prefer 6
3 favourite 7 interesting
3 favourite 7
4 interested
4 interested

6 Answers from a Turkish person
1 Yes it is.
2 I like both.
3 Istanbul.
4 Yes. I like swimming.
5 Yes.
6 Yes.
7 Yes.

216 ANSWER KEY
Unit 49
1 football pitch, tennis racket, basketball, ice hockey, three nil
2 1 T
2 T
3 F You score goals in ice hockey, or You score points in rugby, basketball and volleyball.
4 F You play football on a pitch, or You play tennis, volleyball and basketball on a court.
5 F You play ice hockey with sticks, or You play tennis with rackets.
6 T
7 T
8 F You play rugby with a rugby ball, or You play ice hockey with a puck.
3 1 game 4 score/result, nil
2 basketball 5 pitch, court
3 games, set
4 1 match/game 5 beat
2 against 6 won
3 top 7 drew
4 to 8 beat
5 1 match/game 6 beat
2 against 7 scored
3 lost 8 won
4 drew with 9 leading
5 time 10 score
6 Your own answers

Unit 50
1 1 another place 5 another place
2 inside 6 inside
3 inside 7 another place
4 inside 8 inside
2 1 go 6 spend
2 collects 7 go
3 play 8 does
4 does 9 makes
5 play
3 Your own answers
5 1 True.
2 False. Playing a musical instrument is popular in Russia.
3 False. Dilma plays the guitar.
4 False. Veronica's favourite hobby is drawing.
5 True.
6 False. Alexandra's quite good at shooting.
7 False. Veronica sings in the shower.
8 False. Older people like repairing cars.
6 Answers from a Japanese person
1 I love exercising and cooking.
2 Older people like watching TV, gossiping and playing gateball (a Japanese game).
3 Younger people like karaoke and shopping.
4 I never listen to classical music.
5 No. I can't play a musical instrument.
6 No. I'm a bad singer.

Unit 51
1 1 2004 4 album
2 able 5 Alex Turner
3 two 6 drums
2 1 group 5 album
2 lead 6 chart
3 drummer 7 known
4 single 8 download
3 Answers from a British person
1 The Beatles.
3 In 1962.
4 Hey Jude.
5 Sergeant Pepper's Lonely Hearts Club Band.
6 Eleanor Rigby.
4 1 conductor 5 cello
2 orchestra 6 composer
3 classical 7 perform
4 concert 8 pianist
5 1 orchestra 6 opera singer
2 conductor 7 composer
3 pianist 8 by
4 violinist 9 concert, performing/singing
5 cellist

Unit 52
1 1 thriller 4 cartoon
2 comedy 5 love story
3 action film 6 horror film
2 1 c 2 f 3 a 4 b 5 e
3 1 romantic 3 frightening/scary
2 violent 4 funny
5 1 kind 6 actors
2 about 7 director
3 reviews 8 on
4 in 9 see

ANSWER KEY 217
Answers from a Japanese person
1. I like comedies a lot.
2. ‘The Holiday’.
3. At my local cinema, ‘Nankai Cinema’.
6. It’s a love story.

Unit 53
1. D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 D
2. 1 magazines 5 wars
   2 report 6 opinion(s)
   3 events/news 7 celebrities
   4 disasters
3. 1 in 6 --
   2 the 7 of, on
   3 on 8 believe
   4 out 9 of
   5 programme
4. 1 watch, saw/watched
   2 believe/think, none
   3 news, happened
   4 listen, heard/listened to
   5 paper/newspaper
   6 forecast
   7 watch, much

Your own answers

Answers from a Japanese person
1. I stayed in a ryokan in Shikoku.
2. One night.
3. Yes, very helpful.
4. No. It was not as good as I expected.
5. Yes, it did.
6. No, it didn’t.
7. It had air conditioning but not central heating.
8. Yes, I talked to a lady in the public bath.
9. Yes, I can. It was a good hotel.

Unit 56
1. suitcase 7 boarding card
2. luggage 8 window seat
3. aisle seat 9 ticket
4. hand luggage 10 scales
5. good flight 11 trolley
6. airport
3. 1 no 4 no
   2 no 5 2
   3 yes
4. 1 call, gate 4 check-in
   2 boarding 5 depart/leave
   3 delayed
5. 2 (c) fasten your seat belt
   3 (b) the plane takes off
   4 (d) the plane lands
   5 (e) get off the plane
   6 (f) someone checks your passport
   7 (a) collect your luggage
   8 (b) go through customs
   9 (f) leave the terminal
6. 1 lands
   2 your seat belt
   3 customs, passport control
   4 luggage, baggage reclaim
   5 get on, get off

Answers from a British person
1. Two or three times a year.
2. I usually read a book or magazine.
3. An aisle seat.
4. A small bag and my laptop.
Unit 57
1 1 rent 5 sea
2 swimming costume 6 perfect
3 shorts 7 relax
4 apartment 8 sunbathe
2 1 beach 4 so/two
2 got/took, went 5 flew
3 rented, resort 6 lie

Unit 58
1 1 go 4 take
2 book 5 guided
3 visit 6 go on
2 1 took, typical 4 art
2 should, round 5 went, guide
3 got, map
3 Your own answers

Unit 59
1 a 2 c 3 d 4 b 5 e
2 1 Sign 4 rate
2 Change 5 per
3 currency 6 cash
3 Answers from a British person
1 The pound sterling.
2 £1 = $1.84 at the moment.
3 At a bank or a bureau de change.
4 Yes, often.
5 They are usually inside or outside banks, at the supermarket, in stations and petrol stations.
4 1 deliver letters
2 the name, address and postcode
3 to the post office
4 on the scales
5 a stamp
6 the postman
7 a letter, a parcel, a postcard
5 1 Is there a letter/post box near here?
2 Can you put it on the scales?
3 Can I have three stamps for Argentina?
4 Where can/do I post this letter?
5 How much is a postcard to Russia?
6 Can you buy envelopes at the post office?

Unit 60
1 1 Hello, nice to meet you.
2 Max, this is Hanna. Oh Hanna, this is Max.
3 Bye. I hope to see you again. Oh I hope to see you again. Bye.
4 Goodbye. Nice to meet you. Oh Nice to meet you. Goodbye.
2 1 nice, hi/hello
2 hope, again, goodbye/bye
3 is, Hello/Hi, to meet/see you, Hello/Hi
4 goodbye/bye, to meet/see you, Bye/Goodbye
3 1 See you again.
2 How are things?
3 I must go now.
4 See you on Sunday.
3 See you later.
4 I’ve got to go now.
4 He’s very well.
5 That’s fine.
5 See you soon.
4 1 well, bad, how’s, fine/very well/not bad
2 ‘ve got to, later, that’s then
5 1 Good morning, Morning
2 Good evening, Evening
3 Good afternoon, Afternoon
4 Goodbye/Goodnight, Bye/Bye bye/Night

Unit 61
1 1 i 2 h 3 g 4 d 5 j 6 c 7 f 8 e 9 a
2 1 Have a nice/good day, evening, weekend, holiday, journey, time
2 Happy Christmas, Easter, New Year, birthday
3 Goodnight! Good luck! Well done!
4 Welcome home!

Unit 62
1 1 How often do you go there?
2 What kind of music do you like?
3 What does he do?
4 How long have you lived there?
5 What’s wrong with Peter?
6 Who does this belong to?
7 What’s his flat like?
8 Why don’t you like her?
2 a 4 b 5 c 7 d 1 e 6 f 3 g 2
3 1 often 4 How?/What
2 Whose 5 long
3 What 6 Who
4 What 4 many
2 long 5 nearest
3 time 6 seeing
5 1 far 5 close/shut
2 many 6 worth
3 Which 7 nearest
4 What 8 recommend
6 Answers from a Turkish person
1 In Adana, Turkey.
2 Half of my life.
3 Cappadocia and the coast.
4 Three hours in a car.
5 Aegean Alps (a kebab house in Adana).
Unit 63
1 1 Can you lend me a pen? – Yes, of course.
2 Could you bring the books here, please? – Yes, no problem.
3 Could you possibly wait here a few minutes? – I’m afraid I can’t.
4 Lia, can you change places with Maria, please? – Yes, sure.
2 Possible answers
1 A Could you finish this exercise for homework, please?
B Yes, sure.
2 A Luca, can you change places with Maria, please?
B Yes, no problem.
3 A Could you bring your notebook tomorrow, please?
B I’m afraid I can’t.
4 A Can you lend me a pencil, please?
B Yes, sure.
5 A Could you possibly wait in the classroom a few minutes?
B Yes, no problem.
3 Possible answers
1 Is it all right if I use this dictionary?
2 Do you mind/is it all right if I make a coffee?
3 Could I stay for another ten minutes? Is it OK/all right if I stay another ten minutes? Do you mind if I stay another ten minutes?
4 Is it OK if I close the window?
5 Can I borrow your book?
6 Yes, sure/no problem/go ahead/that’s fine.
7 I’m afraid I need it.
8 Is it all right to have my coffee here? – Yes, of course/no problem/go ahead/that’s fine.
4 Possible answers
1 Do you mind if I go at one o’clock today?
2 Could I borrow a rubber?
3 Is it OK if I go to the toilet?
4 Is it all right if I sit in a different seat?
5 OK; Yes, no problem; Yes, of course; Go ahead; Yes, that’s fine.
Unit 64
1 1 Would you like to come round later?
2 Yes, I’d love to.
3 Do you want to go out for dinner?
4 That sounds lovely.
5 I’m afraid I can’t.
6 That would be nice.
7 Do you want to come to a party?
8 I’m sorry, but I’m busy tonight.
2 1 A Would you like to go out for dinner/a meal?
B Yes, great!
2 A Do you want to come round for a coffee?
B I’m afraid I can’t.
3 A Would you like to come to a party tomorrow?
B Yes, that sounds lovely.
4 A Do you want to go out for a coffee?
B I’d love to, but I’m going to the gym.
Unit 65
1 1 What shall we do this weekend?
2 The weather’s nice, so ...
3 ... what about going to the beach?
4 Yes, good idea.
5 Maybe we could take the train.
6 Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
7 I’d prefer to get them at the station.
2 1 What shall we do this evening?
2 Do you have a suggestion?
3 What about going to see a film?
4 I’d prefer to go by train.
5 Yes, that’s a good idea.
3 1 A What about going to the theatre?
B I’m not sure about that.
2 A What shall we do on Saturday?
B Perhaps we could go out for a meal.
A OK, let’s do that.
3 A Where shall we go this afternoon?
B Let’s go to an exhibition.
A Yeah, that’s a good idea.
Unit 66
1 1 hand, worry 3 Do, fine
2 eat, Could 4 like, Thanks
2 1 Can I give you a hand?
2 Thank you very much.
3 Would you like a drink?
4 Thanks a lot.
5 No, I’m fine, thanks.
3 1 A Would you like a drink?
B Yes, please. Could I have some water?
2 A Do you need some help?
B No, I’m fine, thanks.
3 A Would you like something to eat?
B Yes, please. Could I have an apple?
4 A Can I give you a hand?
B No, don’t worry.
4 t 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 g 6 b
5 of 5 Shall I
2 Let 6 give
3 Shall 7 me
4 Would 8 want
Unit 67

1 1 A I'm really sorry, I've lost your dictionary.
  B Don't worry/never mind.
2 A I'm sorry, I've forgotten your book.
  B Don't worry.
3 A I've broken your cup – I'm very sorry.
  B It doesn't matter.
2 1 That's 5 I'm
  2 worry 6 Sorry, problem
  3 very/really, matter 7 apologize
  4 mind 8 rude

Unit 68

1 1 What do you think of it?
  2 I agree with you.
  3 I don't think it's very good.
  4 It was a waste of money.
  5 Personally, I didn't like it.
  6 I prefer the other one
2 1 think, Personally 3 of, think
  2 opinion, agree 4 sure, prefer
3 Answers from a British person
  1 I'm not sure. I think children watch too much TV.
  2 I agree. It's very bad for your health.
  3 Personally, I like it.
  4 I'm not sure. Other things are more important.
  5 I disagree. I think it's very expensive.

Unit 69

1 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 S
2 1 engaged, phone
  2 number, code
  3 call, out, message, rang, battery
  4 wrong
3 Answers from a British person
  1 My phone number is 600949, the area code is 01632, and my mobile number is 0779 893 200.
  2 My family.
  3 Only a few minutes.
  4 No, not very often. I text my sister sometimes.
  4 1 Oh, hello, is that Kamal?
  2 Just a moment.
  3 Speaking.
  4 Oh, hello, how are you?

5 1 speaking 7 speak to
  2 This isn't 8 just a
  3 in/there, please 9 get
  4 the moment 10 is that
  5 ring/call/phone 11 speaking
  6 back/again 12 It

Unit 70

1 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F
2 1 useful 6 noisy
  2 weak 7 narrow
  3 dead 8 unusual
  4 rich 9 asleep
  5 quiet 10 wide
4 1 SYN 4 OPP
  2 SYN 5 SYN
  3 OPP
  5 1 confusing 6 necessary
  2 helpful 7 strange/odd
  3 impossible 8 clear
  4 mad/crazy 9 annoying/irritating
  5 only

Unit 71

1 1 He's 75 and he still plays tennis.
  2 It's nice there, especially in the morning.
  3 There are only three students in the class.
  4 He even works on Sunday.
  5 She's still at university.
  6 Rio is big, but São Paolo is even bigger.
2 1 only 4 only
  2 still 5 even
  3 particularly 6 still
  3 1 Only 4 only
  2 still 5 even
  3 especially/ particularly
  4 1 very
  2 absolutely
  3 a bit/a little
  4 really
  5 really/extremely
  6 quite
  7 very/really
  8 really
5 Possible answers
  1 He was extremely good.
  2 The holiday was really wonderful.
  3 She's a bit unfriendly.
  4 The kitchen was really clean.
  5 The room was a little small.
  6 Her new boyfriend is absolutely awful.
  7 They're very nice people.
  8 The weather was really terrible.

ANSWER KEY 221
Unit 72
1 1 put, cost, read 4 know, hold, grow
2 write, drive, win 5 buy, bring, think
3 spend, lend
2 left, spoke, kept, won, did, found, felt, sat
3 1 was, slept 5 saw
2 swim 6 bought
3 rang 7 stood
4 wrote, forgot 8 took, went
5 brought, kept, put, felt, held, spent, left, cost, thought, slept, stood up
6 1 forgotten 6 known
2 given 7 spoken
3 seen 8 driven
4 taken 9 grown
5 written
They all end in –n or –en.
7 1 read 5 sent
2 driven 6 slept
3 taught 7 swum
4 won 8 spoken
8 Answers from an Argentinian person
1 I read an English newspaper once a week.
2 No, never.
3 Yes, many times.
4 Yes, a few times in a lottery.
5 Oh, yes. It was terrible!
6 Yes, on a cruise.
7 Yes, many times.
8 Yes, on several occasions.

Unit 73
1 1 out 4 out
2 up 5 up
3 over 6 on
2 1 out 5 down
2 up 6 up
3 on 7 off
4 down 8 over
4 1 Take it off.
   2 Try them on.
   3 Turn it on.
   4 Put them on.
5 1 Could I try it on?
   2 correct
   3 You can take it off if you’re hot.
   4 Look it up in the dictionary.
   5 correct
   6 correct
   7 Did you put it on?
   8 correct

6 Answers from a Hungarian person
1 I grew up in Budapest.
2 I always feel hungry.
3 Once or twice a week.
4 I don’t know many of them, but I get on well with my neighbours.
5 I try on trousers or shoes, but I often buy shirts without trying them on.

Unit 74
1 1 2005 6 midnight
   2 Friday 7 the autumn
   3 April 8 winter
   4 the morning 9 dinner-time
   5 4:40 10 the evening
2 1 at 6 in
   2 at 7 in
   3 in 8 at
   4 in 9 At
   5 On 10 on
3 Answers from a Japanese person
1 I get up at 7:30.
2 I study English at night.
3 I go swimming at the weekend.
4 I watch TV in the evening.
5 I go to sleep at around 11:30.
6 I see my family in the mornings.
7 The last time I went on holiday was in October last year.
8 The last time I went to the mountains was in 2003.
9 The last time I went to bed very late was at New Year.
10 The last time I went to a party was in December.

Unit 75
1 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 F
   9 T 10 T
2 1 ago 4 time
   2 diary 5 appointment
   3 night 6 next
3 1 I went to the cinema
   2 I had a meeting/I went to Wheeler’s Bar
   3 I stayed at Gary’s/I went to Gary’s
   4 I’ve got a doctor’s appointment
   5 It’s Pete’s birthday
   6 I’m seeing my parents/Mum and Dad
4 1 before 5 since
   2 after 6 later
   3 until 7 for
   4 at 8 soon

222 ANSWER KEY
5 1 until 5 at
2 for 6 since
3 soon 7 before
4 in 8 later
6 Your own answers

Unit 76
1 1 in 8 on
2 on 9 on
3 at 10 in
4 in 11 on
5 in 12 at
6 on 13 on
7 in 14 at
2 1 in 4 on
2 in 5 in
3 on 6 at, at, in

3 Answers from a Brazilian person
  – Brazil.
  1 In a city.
  2 In a flat.
  3 Yes, Rio Guiaiba.
  4 It’s on the second floor.
  5 Yes, I do.
  6 I’m learning at work, three hours a week in private lessons.

4 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T
8 T 9 T
5 1 next to 5 between
2 in front of 6 opposite
3 in front of 7 next to
4 next to

6 Answers from a German person
  1 An old factory.
  2 More houses.
  3 A pub, and more houses.
  4 Yes, there’s a supermarket and a newsagents around the corner.
  5 The neighbours’ flat.
  6 Another neighbour’s flat.

8 1 trees 6 bus stop
2 motorway 7 mountain
3 river 8 stairs
4 shop 9 building
5 gate 10 field

9 1 under 6 through
2 into 7 out of
3 up 8 down
4 along 9 across
5 past 10 under

Unit 77
1 1 X ... and it's also near the park.
2 X ... and he understands Greek too.
3 3 X ... and also washed the car.
4 4 X ... and a park near the house as well.

5 1 I often eat ice cream and I also like yoghurt.
2 I enjoy watching TV but I go to the cinema a lot too.
3 I can speak English and I can understand German as well.
4 I read a lot of books but I also listen to music.
5 I play football and I watch it on TV as well.

3 Your own answers
4 1 because of 4 so
2 to 5 to
3 because 6 so
5 1 to 5 so
2 so 6 to
3 because 7 because of
4 because 8 to

Unit 78
1 1 sure 4 sure
2 not sure 5 sure
3 not sure 6 not sure

2 1 If 4 when
2 When 5 when
3 if 6 if

3 1 when 4 when
2 when 5 while/when
3 while/when 6 when

4 1 Then
2 Afterwards/After that
3 Finally
4 First/First of all/Firstly
5 then/after that/afterwards

5 1 Firstly/First/First of all, she made the pasta sauce, and then she boiled the pasta.
After that/Then/Afterwards/Finally, she added the sauce to the pasta.
2 Firstly/First/First of all, I did a degree in History, and then I did a Masters degree.
After that/Afterwards, I got a teaching job in Liverpool.
3 Firstly/First/First of all, we started our holiday in Heidelberg, and then we stayed in Munich for a few days.
After that/Afterwards/Finally, we flew back to Rome.
4 Firstly/First/First of all, I made a shopping list, and then I went to the market. After that/Afterwards, I came home and had a cup of tea. Finally, I cooked the dinner.
6 Answers from a Greek person
First of all I went to see a friend, and then we had lunch together. After that, I went home and watched my favourite show on the TV and after that I read a book. Late in the evening I had dinner and finally went to bed at about midnight.

Unit 79
1 She's got blue eyes.
2 They've got a small dog.
3 I haven't got a mobile phone.
4 He hasn't got any money.
5 Have you got any sisters?
6 Has she got a flat in town?
2 1 Has she got any children? or Does she have any children?
2 They've got a lovely garden. or They have a lovely garden.
3 Has she got long hair? or Does she have long hair?
4 My sister hasn't got a boyfriend. or My sister doesn't have a boyfriend.
5 Have you got a computer? or Do you have a computer?
6 We haven't got any friends here. or We don't have any friends here.
3 1 got 4 Have
2 Do 5 Do
3 Have

4 Answers from a British person
1 Yes, I have. I use it to go to college.
2 Yes, an Apple.
3 Yes, his name's Barney.
4 Yes, I've got the Oxford Wordpower Dictionary.
5 Yes, I do. I've got an American friend, and a German friend who speaks excellent English.

5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 1</th>
<th>Group 2</th>
<th>Group 3</th>
<th>Group 4</th>
<th>Group 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rest</td>
<td>breakfast</td>
<td>bath</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>lunch</td>
<td>shower</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>weekend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dinner</td>
<td>wash</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>journey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 1 walk 8 swim
2 drink 5 rest
3 dinner 6 journey

7 1 eat/drink 8 time/day
2 rest/break 6 weekend
3 break 7 holiday/time
4 journey 8 bath

Unit 80
1 1 Did you get my message?
2 I must get some new clothes.
3 We got home late last night.
4 It's getting cold.
5 I got three letters today.
6 Where did you get that bag?
7 He needs to get a job.
8 Do you want to get a/the train?
2 1 receive 5 receive
2 buy 6 buy
3 arrive 7 obtain
4 become 8 travel
3 1 get a/the bus
2 get here/home/back
3 get them
4 getting cold
5 getting late
6 get it
7 get one
8 get a bus/taxi
Review answer key

Basic English

Unit 1
1 twelve
2 fifteen
3 thirteen
4 thirty-four
5 eleven
6 seventy-nine
7 a/one hundred and twelve
8 twenty-seven
9 a/one hundred and seventy-five
10 two hundred and eighty-six
11 forty-one
12 nine hundred and fifty-three

Unit 2
1 twenty to two, five to two
2 midnight/midday, quarter past twelve
3 five past eleven, twenty past eleven
4 twenty past two, twenty-five to three
5 five to nine, ten past nine
6 half past six, quarter to seven
7 twenty-five past five, twenty to six

Unit 3
1 1 date, of
2 month, year
3 season
4 1 March
2 autumn
3 Thursday
4 May
5 1 birthday
2 Year’s Day
3 season

Unit 4
1 Italy
2 Hungary
3 Mexico
4 Swiss
5 China
6 Czech
7 Egypt
8 Spanish
9 1 Poland
2 Brazilian
3 Czech Republic
4 Chinese
5 Polish
6 Japanese
7 Brazilian
8 Turkish
9 Italian
10 Chinese
11 Spain
12 Australian

Unit 5
1 board
2 rubber
3 noticeboard
4 dictionary
5 pencil sharpener
6 notebook
7 CD player
8 chair
9 table/desk
10 folder

Unit 6
1 sentence
2 adverb
3 preposition
4 phrase
5 regular
6 article
7 pronoun
8 word
9 adjective
10 singular
11 irregular
12 plural

Unit 7
1 Wrong.
2 Spelling is how you write something, and pronunciation is how you say something.
3 Your own answer.
4 /’ʌ/ pl/’ʌn/
5 It’s the opposite of right or correct.
6 No, that’s wrong.
7 A frying pan.
8 S-T-A-M-P.

People

Unit 8
1 name
2 you come
3 from
4 exactly
5 I have
6 postcode
7 do
8 ’m/’am
9 are you
10 how old
Unit 9

Marital Status
- Married
- Single
- Divorced

Occupation
- Professor
- Teacher
- Doctor
- Nurse

Habits
- Smoker
- Non-smoker
- Coffee drinker

Tongue Daytime
- Toned
- Slurred

Birthplace
- USA
- UK
- India

Unit 10

1. A G O R E L A T I
2. S E J E Y W E S T
3. I T K A D A U R I N D
4. U T O S I Q Y M E F O N T A M U
6. U I T R E T H N E I T G S N
7. I O N I T A C I T L N O
8. U E S N I S F X E P H E W
9. P A R U N U T S E I O T I
10. W E D N E C T I

1. My brother is eighteen years old.
2. I was born in 1990.
3. My sister is younger than me.
4. His parents are divorced.
5. There are five of us in my family.
6. She is older than her brother.
7. We spend a lot of time together.
8. Who is the youngest in the family?

Unit 11

1. Using your hands: push, pick something up, hold, pull, carry, drop, turn something off, put something down
2. Using your feet or legs: walk, stand up, jump, run, ride, climb

2. 1 door 6 a bag
2. 2 a wall 7 a pencil
3. 3 a radio 8 a tree
4. 4 a bicycle 9 a book
5. 5 a bicycle 10 a bed

Unit 12

1. A 2 B 3 B 4 A 5 A 6 A 7 B 8 B
2. 9 B 10 A 11 B 12 A 13 A

Unit 13

Possible answers
1. He's short and overweight. He's got short, brown hair and a moustache. He's middle-aged.
2. She's average height and average weight. She's got long, blonde, curly hair. She's a teenager/person.
3. He's got medium-length, fair, wavy hair. He's got brown eyes and a beard. He's an adult.
4. She's attractive. She's got short, grey hair and brown eyes. She's elderly.

Unit 14

Positive: funny, clever, kind, sociable
Negative: stupid, untidy, horrible
2. 1 lazy 5 Intelligent
2. 2 shy 6 on my own
3. 3 shared 7 funny
4. 4 run 8 organized

Unit 15

1. 1 went 6 together
2. 2 married 7 up
3. 3 relationship 8 get
4. 4 get 9 couple
5. 5 had

Unit 16

1. 1 excited 6 tired
2. 2 hungry 7 scared
3. 3 surprised 8 nervous
4. 4 embarrassed 9 matter
5. 5 worried 10 thirsty

2. 1 P 2 N 3 N 4 N 5 N 6 P 7 N 8 N
9 N 10 P
Everyday life

Unit 17
1 1 We sometimes go for a walk after lunch.
2 Do you usually play tennis at the weekend?
3 I usually go to the gym, and then I go home.
4 She listens to music on her MP3 player when she goes shopping.
5 On Sundays I often stay in and watch TV.
6 I talk to my parents every evening.
7 My sister occasionally comes round and we have dinner together.
8 What time do you get to work in the morning?
2 1 j 2 i 3 e 4 b 5 h 6 a 7 d 8 f
9 k 10 g

Unit 18
1 1 two socks 6 tie
2 hat 7 jumper
3 gloves 8 tights
4 boots 9 t-shirt
5 watch 10 belt
2 1 yellow 6 red
2 green 7 orange
3 purple 8 grey
4 pink 9 pale/light blue
5 brown 10 dark blue
3 1 a scarf
2 a pair of jeans or some jeans
3 some ties
4 a pair of trousers or some trousers
5 some shirts
6 a jacket
7 a pair of trainers or some trainers
8 a pair of sandals or some sandals

Unit 19
1 1 take 9 cash desk
2 loose 10 medium
3 cheap 11 help
4 size 12 wrong
5 try 13 casual
6 changing 14 assistant
7 pay 15 leave
8 horrible 16 need
2 1 looking 7 too
2 take 8 size
3 nice 9 lovely/nice
4 on 10 them
5 room 11 pay
6 look 12 cash

Unit 20
1 1 Lottery 5 price 9 earn
2 sold 6 saved 10 paid
3 bought 7 paid 11 bills
4 cost 8 in 12 fare

Unit 21
1 1 a bit 4 a bit of
2 a lot of 5 a bit
3 a lot 6 a lot of
2 Across Down
1 blows 2 lot
5 ice 3 storm
8 humid 4 windy
9 snow 6 shower
11 freezing 7 thunder
12 heavy 10 shines
13 dry 11 foggy

Unit 22
1 T M X E A Z R O S
2 A C K A H I S J O
3 Q S O ID Y A M R
4 F L U L Y D Z E
5 U C J A H D E A K T
6 I W E S B I C R H
7 T O W H A C H E R
8 A S V E G E L O
9 F H U R T S D E M A
10 R S K E V W E L L

1 I've got a headache.
2 I've got a sore throat.
3 I've got toothache.
4 I've got backache.
5 I've got flu.
6 I feel sick.
7 I don't feel well.
8 My arm hurts.
9 I've got a pain in my ear.

Unit 23
1 something 6 take
2 Try/Take 7 could
3 tablets 8 box
4 often 9 medicine
5 take
Food and drink

Unit 24
Animal: duck, pig, sheep, lamb, cow
Meat: beef, duck, pork, lamb, ham
Fish: tuna, salmon
Seafood: crab, mussels, prawns, squid

Unit 25
1 Possible answers
red: red pepper, tomato, cherry, chilli, strawberry
yellow: banana, lemon, pineapple, melon
orange: orange, carrot, peach, mango
white/cream: garlic, mushroom, potato, cauliflower
green: peas, beans, cabbage, lettuce, cucumber, courgette

Getting around

Unit 28
1 fork, spoon 5 pepper
2 main course, dessert 6 vinegar
3 fried or roast or boiled 7 white
4 medium, well done 8 sparkling

Unit 29
1 Are you ready to order?
   C Yes, I'll have the tomato soup.
   W Right. And for your main course?
   C Fillet steak with chips.
   2 Do you want red wine or white wine?
   C Red wine, please.
   W OK. Is that a bottle or just a glass?
   3 At the end of the meal
   C Could I have the bill, please?
   W Yes, of course.

Unit 30
1 platform 6 journey
2 fast 7 carriage
3 miss 8 ticket
4 reserve 9 fare
5 timetable

The word in the grey squares is 'passenger'.

2 next train 4 leave
2 direct 5 get to
2 change 6 platform

Unit 31
1 The bank is on the right.
2 How do I get to the river?
3 Go along here and turn left.
4 Go straight on and turn right.
5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the bank?
6 Yes, it's on the corner of this street.

Unit 26
1 Possible answers
Packet: biscuits, pasta, rice, butter
Carton: orange juice, milk
Box: eggs, matches, chocolates
Bottle: milk, olive oil, water, orange juice, wine
Jar: jam, olives
Tin: tomatoes, tuna

2 Possible answers
1 Could I have some sugar, please?
2 I'd like some sugar, please.
3 Have you got any sugar?
4 Anything else?
5 That's it. Thanks.
6 How much (sugar) would you like?
Unit 32
1 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 T
9 F 10 T
2 1 motorway 5 lane
2 speed limit 6 traffic jams
3 overtake 7 rush hour
4 accident 8 take

Unit 33
1 "no parking" 5 "sale"
2 "entrance" or "way in" 6 out of order
3 "no vacancies" 7 "no exit"
4 "please do not disturb" 8 "no smoking"

Places
Unit 34
1 north 6 capital
2 south 7 river
3 coast; coast 8 mountain
4 enormous 9 beach
5 border 10 famous

Unit 35
1 a modern city 5 there's nothing to do
2 over a million 6 a quiet street
3 north-east 7 clean
4 dangerous 8 fact
2 1 of 7 on
2 population 8 famous
3 historic 9 statue
4 palace 10 square
5 place 11 park
6 city 12 cosmopolitan

Unit 36
1 1 valley 5 grass
2 healthy 6 path
3 boat 7 lake
4 farmer 8 alone
2 1 horse 4 lonely
2 grow 5 own
3 crops 6 countryside

Unit 37
1 1 shopping centre
2 newsagent's
3 chemist's
4 hypermarket, supermarket
5 baker's
6 bookshop
7 butcher's
8 department store
9 music shop

Unit 38
1 1 bathroom 5 garage
2 kitchen 6 lift
3 bedroom 7 garden
4 study 8 home
2 1 F 2 B 3 a 4 g 5 i 6 h 7 c 8 e

Unit 39
1 1 dishwasher, sink 5 cupboard
2 washing machine 6 fridge
3 bin 7 freezer
4 microwave 8 oven
2 1 put 4 do, empty
2 Put, turn 5 cook
3 turn, out

Unit 40
1 Bedroom: wardrobe, blanket, sheet, chest of drawers, single bed, desk
Bathroom: towel, toilet, shower, washbasin, bath, bidet
2 1 put on or take off, make-up or tissues
2 have, a razor or an electric razor
3 clean, a toothbrush and toothpaste
4 do or brush, a brush or a comb
5 have, soap
Unit 41

1  Picture 1 has got cushions, but picture 2 hasn't.
2  Picture 1 has got one armchair, picture 2 has got two.
3  Picture 1 has got a radiator, but picture 2 hasn't.
4  Picture 1 has got two lamps, but picture 2 has got one.
5  Picture 1 has got a picture on the wall, but picture 2 hasn't.
6  Picture 1 has got a rug on the floor, but picture 2 hasn't.
7  Picture 2 has got a fireplace, but picture 1 hasn't.
8  Picture 2 has got a carpet, but picture 1 hasn't.
9  Picture 2 has got a light, but picture 1 hasn't.
10 Picture 2 has got a coffee table, but picture 1 hasn't.

Study and work

Unit 42

1  biology 7  geography
2  history 8  chemistry
3  literature 9  design and
4  physics 10  technology
5  maths/music 10  modern languages
6  art

2  1  badly
3  2  a  3  g  4  e  5  i  6  b  7  f  8  h  9  d

Unit 43

1  science 5  again
2  lasts 6  degree
3  terms 7  research
4  do/write 8  PhD or Doctor of Philosophy
2  People: undergraduate, engineer, lawyer, politician
   Subjects: medicine, economics, architecture, business studies, politics
   Phrases: do research, do a degree, write an essay

Unit 44

Possible answers
1  a dentist, a vet, a businessman, a businesswoman
2  a dentist, a nurse, a vet, a builder, a hairdresser
3  a businessman or businesswoman, a pilot, a shop assistant
4  retired, unemployed
5  a pilot, a nurse, a police officer, a soldier
6  a businessman, a businesswoman

Unit 45

1  1  j  2  h  3  a  4  g
2  2  in
3  3  a

Unit 46

1  1  laptop
2  2  keyboard
3  3  mouse
4  4  memory stick
2  1  copy
3  2  screen
4  4  mouse

The word in the grey squares is 'document'.

Unit 47

1  chatroom, broadband, download, website, online, search engine, inbox, junk mail
2  1  attachment
3  2  message
4  4  delete
5  5  fast
6  6  send

Hobbies and interests

Unit 48

1  1  I love it, it's my favourite thing, it's wonderful, I think it's fantastic
2  I quite enjoy it, it's quite enjoyable
3  I think it's OK
4  I'm not very keen on it, I don't like it very much, I'm not very interested in it
5  I really hate it

2  1  interested
2  2  on
3  3  driving

4  4  to
5  5  boring
6  6  quite likes
Unit 49
1 volleyball, tennis, basketball
2 rugby, ice hockey, volleyball, tennis, basketball
3 football, rugby, ice hockey, volleyball, basketball
4 a) tennis  b) ice hockey
2 1 matches  4 scored
2 drew  5 goals
3 lost  6 top

Unit 50
1 favourite, go  4 instrument
2 does  5 classical
3 repairs  6 do, spend
2 1 spending  4 play
2 going  5 arranging
3 games

Unit 51
1 Pop and rock: band, lead singer, drummer, single, guitar
Classical music: orchestra, violin, conductor, composer, cello
2 Possible answers
1 Bryn Terfel is a famous opera singer in my country.
2 Chris Martin is lead singer with Coldplay.
3 Sir Simon Rattle is a famous conductor.
4 The London Symphony orchestra comes from my country.
5 Alfred Brendel is a great pianist.
6 Sergeant Pepper by the Beatles is one of my favourite albums.
7 'Beautiful liar' by Beyoncé and Shakira is number 1 in the charts at the moment.
8 Charlie Watts is the drummer with the Rolling Stones.

Unit 52
1 war, violent  4 thriller, exciting
2 comedy, funny  5 love, romantic
3 horror, frightening
2 1 about  5 reviews
2 in  6 director
3 stars  7 see
4 actor

Unit 53
1 I usually buy a newspaper every day to find out what has happened, but yesterday I listened (2) to the news in the car and then had dinner and watched it (3) on TV.
As usual most (4) of it was bad news: more than twenty people (5) died in a terrible road accident. After the news, I watched an interesting (6) programme about a television news (7) reporter who was in Thailand during the Tsunami in 2004.

2 1 c  2 e  3 d  4 f  5 b  6 a

Holidays
Unit 54
1 arrange  6 book
2 currency  7 pack
3 hire  8 flight
4 go abroad  9 accommodation
5 holiday

Unit 55
1 1 h  2 a  3 d  4 j  5 g  6 f  7 i  8 k
9 b  10 c
2 1 stayed  5 delicious
2 suite  6 night
3 facilities  7 parking
4 staff  8 book

Unit 56
1 1 l  2 e  3 g  4 h  5 b  6 a  7 d  8 f  9 c

2 1 trolley  6 got
2 ticket  7 fastened
3 scales  8 landed
4 flight  9 collected
5 delayed  10 went/walked

Unit 57
1 ... We flew to Marseille ...
2 ... we had to get a bus to Cassis ...
3 ... holiday resort by the sea ...
4 ... We rented an apartment ...
5 ... we went for a walk ...
6 ... we sunbathed on the beach ...
7 ... an hour or so ...
8 ... was perfect for the whole week ...

Unit 58
1 We're going on a tour of the city this afternoon.
2 Did you go sightseeing in Paris?
3 We always get lost in a new place.
4 She took a lot of photos on her holiday.
5 Did you visit the museum? (or at the museum)
6 There were lots of typical tourists.
7 There's a good exhibition at the art gallery.
8 Have you got a guidebook about London, please?
Unit 59

1 1 post office 7 per cent
2 postcode 8 parcel
3 postman/ postwoman 9 currency
4 postbox 10 cash machine
5 postcards 11 change
6 put, put 12 commission
2 1 send 13 charge, charge
2 envelope/letter/parcel 5 into
3 deliver 6 bureau, change

Social English

Unit 60

1 1S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 S 8 S
9 D 10 S
2 1 hope to see you again 5 shake hands
2 how are you? 6 see you soon
3 not bad 7 nice to meet you
4 how do you do? 8 hi there
5 see you later

Unit 61

1 happy birthday
2 have a good weekend
3 congratulations
4 good luck
5 well done
6 welcome home
7 have a good holiday
8 Happy New Year

Unit 62

1 1 How many? 6 How long?
2 Why? 7 Whose?
3 How far? 8 Which?
4 How often? 9 Who?
5 Where?
2 1 How 4 often
2 do 5 long
3 does 6 kind of

Answers from a South Korean person
► I have a problem with speaking fluently and pronunciation.
1 I've got one brother.
2 I work at a travel agency.
3 She works in a nursery school as a teacher.
4 More than ten hours a week.
5 For ten years.
6 I don't like playing games, but I like watching football.

Unit 63

1 1 you, I 6 I
2 I, I 7 I
3 you 8 you
4 you 9 you
5 I
2 no problem, of course, go ahead, I'm afraid I need it, that's fine

Unit 64

1 A Would you like to have lunch tomorrow? or Do you want to have lunch tomorrow?
B I'm afraid but I can't. or I'm sorry but I can't.
2 A Would you like to go skiing this weekend? or Do you want to go skiing this weekend?
B Yes, that sounds fun! or That would be fun.
3 A Would you like to come round here for a drink tonight?
B Yes, I'd love to, but I'm busy.
4 A Do you want to come round for a meal at the weekend?
B I'm sorry, but I'm busy this weekend.

Unit 65

1 shall 5 about
2 maybe 6 idea
3 could 7 let
4 sure

Unit 66

1 Would you like a sandwich? Do you want a drink? or Do you want a sandwich? Would you like a drink?
2 Do you need a hand? Do you want some help? or Do you need some help? Do you want a hand?
3 No, I'm fine, thanks. Don't worry.
4 Thanks a lot. Thank you very much.
5 Let me pay for the coffees. Shall I do that for you?
6 That's very kind of you. Thank you very much.
Unit 67
Possible answers
1 A I’m sorry, I forgot to post your letter. B Never mind, it doesn’t matter. Don’t worry.
2 A I’m sorry I’m late. B That’s OK. Or Don’t worry.
3 A I’m really sorry, I’ve broken a cup. B That’s OK. Or It doesn’t matter.
4 A Sorry, could you repeat that, please? B Sure, no problem.

Unit 68
1 opinion 4 prefer
2 excellent 5 personally
3 disagree 6 a waste of

Unit 69
1 ring/call, at the moment 3 ring/phone just a moment
2 speaking 5 sent me a text
2 1 B Is that Cheryl? 2 A Yes, speaking. 3 B Hi, it’s Keira.
4 A Hello, Keira. How are you? 5 B I’m fine, thanks. Er, is Jessica in?
6 A Yes. Just a moment. I’ll get her.
7 B Thanks.

Language

Unit 70
1 narrow 4 rich
2 dead 5 asleep
3 noisy
2 1 helpful 5 noisy
2 common 6 unnecessary
3 useless 7 clear
4 strange 8 annoying
The word in grey is ‘necessary’.

Unit 71
1 We couldn’t play the match with only ten players.
2 He lives in Italy, but still speaks English most of the time.
3 The food is absolutely fantastic in that restaurant.
4 Max didn’t like the film but I thought it was quite good.
5 The last film was good, but this is even better.
6 My English is getting a bit better.

Unit 72
Across Down
1 been 1 went
2 read 2 seen
3 took 3 bought
9 put 5 done
11 found 7 known
13 slept 8 ran
14 sent 10 thought
15 forgot 12 left
13 sat

Unit 73
1 I grew up in a village.
2 Why don’t you sit down?
3 I must find out their address.
4 She fell over in the street.
5 Did you go out last night?
6 Could you turn on the light? Or Could you turn the light on?
7 Look it up in your dictionary.
8 Could I try them on?
2 1 gave up 4 take off
2 going up 5 get on (well)
3 go back 6 carry on

Unit 74
In: December, summer, 2007, the afternoon, the 21st century
At: three o’clock, half past five, breakfast, the weekend, midnight
On: Monday morning, the sixth of March, my birthday, Tuesday, Friday evening

Unit 75
1 last week 5 this evening
2 two days ago 6 tomorrow morning
3 yesterday 7 tomorrow evening
afternoon 8 next Monday
4 last night 9 in ten days’ time
2 1 stayed in one of the rooms in the hotel until I found an apartment or found somewhere to live.
2 I met a Spanish man after I got a job in (the south of) Portugal.
3 I’ve lived in the house I bought since I got married.
4 I’ve lived in Portugal for five years.
5 Soon I’m going to have a baby.
6 At the moment we’re preparing a room for the baby.
Unit 76
1 over 7 next to
2 past 8 into
3 near 9 out of
4 above 10 opposite
5 down 11 between
6 across 12 through
2 1 near, above, next to, opposite
2 past, across, into, out of, through
('near' and 'next to' are also possible)
3 In: my town, Germany, the countryside, the bedroom
At: school, home, a football match, work
On: the table, the wall, the coast, the second floor

Unit 77
1 1 g 2 i 3 e 4 h 5 f 6 d 7 a 8 b
2 1 because of 4 because
2 to 5 so
3 also 6 as well

Unit 78
1 When you're travelling on a long flight, always wear comfortable clothes.
2 If you can choose your seat on the plane, sit near the front where it's quiet.
3 While/When you are waiting for the flight, sit in the departure lounge.
4 When you get off, don't leave anything on the plane.
5 If you feel ill during the flight, tell the airline staff.
6 If you lose your passport on holiday, go to the embassy.

Unit 79
1 I have 5 didn't
2 a 6 time
3 Did you have 7 a rest
4 Have 8 was, had

Unit 80
1 I arrive 9, obtain 2, buy 7, travel by 8,
receive 4 and 6, become 3 and 5
2 Answers from a Hungarian person
1 No, I'm happy in my current job.
2 Yes, I get very tired when it's hot.
3 I get about one or two messages a day.
4 No.
5 Tickets to see my favourite actor at the theatre.
6 I bought them from a shop in the centre of town.
7 I never get the train to work, I always walk.
8 I got home at about ten o'clock last night.
### Spotlight boxes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Title of spotlight box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>about</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3A</td>
<td>Capital letters</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3B</td>
<td>Saying and writing dates</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>People from a country</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>information</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10B</td>
<td>How old are you?</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11A</td>
<td>Irregular verbs</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13A</td>
<td>thin, fat, ugly</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13C</td>
<td>Other phrases for age</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14A</td>
<td>What’s ... like?</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14B</td>
<td>really</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15A</td>
<td>relationship</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15B</td>
<td>each other</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16B</td>
<td>get + adjective</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17A</td>
<td>usually, and normally</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17C</td>
<td>every and all</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18A</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18C</td>
<td>Plural nouns</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19B</td>
<td>too and very</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19C</td>
<td>I’ll take it/I’ll leave it</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20A</td>
<td>Money</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21A</td>
<td>a lot of/a bit of</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22A</td>
<td>be ill/sick</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22B</td>
<td>should + verb</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Asking for things in a chemist’s pig</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>pig</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25B</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26A</td>
<td>Uncountable nouns</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26B</td>
<td>tin and can</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26C</td>
<td>how much and how many</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Yes, please? and Yes, please.</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28C</td>
<td>another or some more</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>How long does it take?</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30A</td>
<td>last</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30B</td>
<td>book something in advance</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Excuse me ...</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35A</td>
<td>place</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35B</td>
<td>Noun + shop</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36B</td>
<td>alone and lonely</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37A</td>
<td>flat, house and home</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Title of spotlight box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>39B</td>
<td>do a noun</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40B</td>
<td>have + noun</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42A</td>
<td>be good at something</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42B</td>
<td>at (the age of) ...</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42C</td>
<td>exam (examination)</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43A</td>
<td>How long does it last?</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>a/an with jobs</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45B</td>
<td>Spend time doing something</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46A</td>
<td>keep</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48A</td>
<td>like/love/hate + -ing</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48B</td>
<td>interesting/interested</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48B</td>
<td>Irregular verbs</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51B</td>
<td>by</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52A</td>
<td>What kind of ...?</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53B</td>
<td>watch, see, listen, hear</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>might + verb</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55B</td>
<td>That’s a shame/What a shame</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>should + verb</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60A</td>
<td>Introductions</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60B</td>
<td>See you ...</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>cheers</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62A</td>
<td>whose and belong to</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62B</td>
<td>which or what?</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63A</td>
<td>Being polite</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63B</td>
<td>lend and borrow</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Would you like to ... or Do you want to ...?</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Saying no</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66A</td>
<td>Saying thank you</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66B</td>
<td>let me + verb</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>(I’m) sorry</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69B</td>
<td>Saying phone numbers</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70A</td>
<td>Position of adjectives</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71B</td>
<td>Gradable and ungradable adjectives</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72B</td>
<td>ever</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73A</td>
<td>Phrasal verbs</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75B</td>
<td>for and since</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79A</td>
<td>have and have got</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Word list / Index

Numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers.

a.m. /aiˈɛm/ 2
ATM /ˈeɪtəm/ 59
able /ˈeɪbl/ 51
about (≈ approximately) /əˈbaut/ 1
about (≈ the subject is) /əˈbaut/ 52
above /əˈbʌv/ 76
abroad /ˈæbrəd/ 54
absolutely /ˈæbsəluːtli/ 71
accept /əˈksept/ 66
access as in internet access /ˈækses/ 55
accessories /ˈæksesəriz/ 18
accident /əˈsɪdent/ 29
accommodation /əˈkɒməˌdeɪʃən/ 54
account as in bank account /ˈkaʊnt/ 20
across /əˈkrɔs/ 76
action /ˈæksn/ 52
actor /ˈæktər/ 52
actress /ˈæktres/ 52
address /əˈdres/ 8, 9, 47, 59
adjective /əˈdʒektɪv/ 6
adult /əˈdʌlt/ 13
advent as in in advance /ədˈvɛns/ 30
adverb /əˈdɜrv/ 6
advert /əˈdɜrvt/ 53
advertisement /ədˈvɜrtsmənt/ 53
advice /ədˈvایs/ 15
afraid as in I’m afraid /əˈfref/ 63, 64
afraid as in I’m afraid not /əˈfref/ 55
Africa /ˈæfrɪkə/ 4
after /ˈɛftər/ 2, 75
after that /ˈɛftər ˈðæt/ 78
afternoon /ˈɛftərˌnʌn/ 2, 60
afterwards /ˈɛftərˌwɜːdz/ 78
again /əˈɡen/ 43, 60
against /əˈɡens/ 49
ago /əˈgoʊ/ 75
agree, agree with someone /əˈgrɪ/ 68
ahead as in go ahead /əˈhed/ 63
air conditioning /ˈeə kəndɪʃənɪŋ/ 55
airline /ˈɛəlɛɪn/ 45
airport /ˈeəpɔːrt/ 56
aisle seat /ˈea sɛt/ 56
album /ˈælbəm/ 51
alive /əˈlaɪv/ 70
all /ɔl/ 17, 53
all as in first of all /ɔl/ 78
all as in that’s all /ɔl/ 26
all right /ɔl ˈrʌt/ 63, 67
almost /əˈməʊl/ 2
alone /əˈləʊn/ 36
along /əˈlɒŋ/ 31, 76
also /əˈlɔːz/ 77
altogether /əˈləʊtɡər/ 20
always /ˈɔlvəz/ 17
American /ˈɛmərɪkən/ 4
and /ænd, ənd/ 77
as in and you /ænd, ənd/ 61
angry /ˈæŋɡri/ 16
animal /ˈænɪml/ 24
ankle /ˈæŋkl/ 12
annoying /əˈnɔɪɪŋ/ 70
another /əˈnʌðər/ 28
answer the phone /ˈɑnswər da ˈfəʊn/ 45
antisepptic /ˈæntiˌsɛpˈtɪk/ 23
anything else /ˈænɪθɪŋ ˈels/ 26
apartment /əˈpɑːrtmənt/ 57
apologize /əˈpɒlədʒaɪz/ 67
apple /ˈæpl/ 25
appointment /əˈpɔɪntmənt/ 75
Arabic /əˈræbɪk/ 4
architect /ərˈkɪtɛkt/ 43
architecture /ərˈkɪtɛktʃər/ 43
area /ˈɛriə/ 4, 36, 69
Argentinian /ərˈɡɪtənjən/ 4
art /ɑːt/ 42
art gallery /ˈɑːt ɡələri/ 58
article /əˈrɪkl/ 53
article as in (in)definite article /ərɪkl/ 7
as well /əz ˈwel/ 77
Asia /ˈæzɪə/ 4
asleep /əˈsliːp/ 70
at as in be good at /æt, ət/ 42
at (= place) /æt, ət/ 76
at (= time) /æt, ət/ 2, 74
attachment /əˈtætʃmənt/ 47
attractive /ətræktɪv/ 13
aubergine /əˈbɜːrdʒiːn/ 25
aunt /ənt/ 10
Australia /əˈstrəliə/ 4
Australian /əˈstrəliən/ 4
autumn /ɔːˈtɜːm/ 3
average /əˈvɜːrɪdʒ/ 13

WORD LIST 237
avocado /əˈvoʊkədəʊ/ 25
awake /ˈwreɪk/ 70
awful /ˈəfl/ 19
BA (Bachelor of Arts) /ˈbiː əri (ˌbætərəv ˈaːr̩s)/ 43
BSc (Bachelor of Science) /ˈbaː ˌsiː (ˌbætərəv ˈsænsəz)/ 43
baby /ˈbeɪbi/ 13, 15
back /bæk/ 12
backache /ˈbækək/ 22
backup /ˈbækəp/ 46
baker /ˈbeɪkər/ 24
bad as not bad /ˌbeɪd/ 60
badly as in do badly /ˌbeɪdlɪ/ 42
bag /bæɡ/ 5, 56
baggage /ˈbeɪdʒɪdʒ/ 56
baguette /ˈbeɪɡət/ 27
basket /ˈbeɪskət/ 37
batcary /ˈbætʃərə/ 38
ball /bɔːl/ 49
banana /ˈbeɪnənə/ 25
bank account /ˈbæŋk əˈkaʊnt/ 20
bar /ˈbær/ 26
basement /ˈbeɪsmənt/ 38
basket /ˈbeɪskət/ 37
basketball /ˈbeɪskɪtˈbɛld/ 49
bath /bɑːθ/ 40, 79
bathroom /ˈbeɪθrəm/ 38
bathroom /ˈbeɪθrəm/ 38
battery /ˈbeɪtəri/ 69
be /bi/ 16
beach /ˈbētʃ/ 34, 57
beats /beɪts/ 25
beard /ˈbeəd/ 13
beat /bɪt/ 49
beautiful /ˈbjuːtɪfl/ 13
because /bɪˈkɔːns/ 77
become /ˈbɪkəm/ 15
bed /bɛd/ 17, 22
bed as in single bed /ˌbed/ 40
bedroom /ˈbedroʊm/ 38
bedside table /ˈbedsaɪd ˈbed/ 40
beef /ˈbɪf/ 24
before /ˈbiːfɔr/ 75
beginning /ˈbɪgənɪŋ/ 46
behind /bɪˈhind/ 76
believe /ˈbɪli v/ 53
cell /ˈsɛl/ 33
belong /ˈbɛləŋg/ 62
below /ˈbɛləʊ/ 76
belt /bɛlt/ 18
belt as in seat belt /ˈbɛlt/ 56
best /bɛst/ 42
best friend /ˈbest ˈfrend/ 15
between /ˈbɛtwn/ 7
between /ˈbɛtwn/ 76
bicycle /ˈbaɪsɪkl/ 36
bidet /ˈbɪdɛt/ 40
big /bɪg/ 19
bike /baɪk/ 36
bill /bɪl/ 20, 28
bin as in rubbish bin /bɪn/ 39
biology /ˌbaɪəˈlɒdʒi/ 42
bird /bɜːd/ 36
birthday /ˈbɜːθdeɪ/ 9
biscuits /ˈbɪskəts/ 26
bit as in a bit of /bɪt/ 21
bitter /ˈbɪtər/ 25
black /ˈblæk/ 13, 18
black coffee /ˈbłæk ˈkɒfi/ 27
blanket /ˈblæŋkɪt/ 40
block of flats /ˈblɒk əv ˈflæts/ 38
blonde /ˈblɒnd/ 13
bloom /ˈbluːm/ 21
blue /ˈbluː/ 18
board n /bɔːd/ 5
board pen /ˈbɔːd ˈpɛn/ 5
boarding /ˈbɔːdɪŋ/ 56
boarding card /ˈbɔːdɪŋ ˈkɑːrd/ 56
boat /ˈbəʊt/ 36
boiled /ˈbɔɪld/ 28
boiling /ˈbɔɪlɪŋ/ 16
book v /bʊk/ 30, 54, 55
bookshelf /ˈbʊkʃɛlf/ 41
boots /ˈbʊts/ 18
border /ˈbɜːrdər/ 34
boring /ˈbɔːrɪŋ/ 48
born as in he born /bɔːrn/ 10
borrow /ˈbɔːrəʊ/ 63
boss /ˈbɒs/ 44
bottle /ˈbɒtl/ 26, 28
bottom (= part of the body) /ˈbɒtəm/ 12
bottom (= the lowest part) /ˈbɒtəm/ 59
bowl /ˈbəʊl/ 28
box /ˈbɒks/ 26
box as in letter box /ˈbɒks/ 59
boyfriend /ˈbɔɪfrɛnd/ 10, 15
Brazil /ˈbreɪzəl/ 4
Brazilian /ˈbreɪzɪən/ 4
bread /ˈbred/ 26, 27
break v /briːk/ 11, 67
break n /ˈbrelk/ 79
breakfast /ˈbrekfəst/ 17, 79
breeze /ˈbriːz/ 21
bridge /ˈbrɪdʒ/ 35
bring /brɪŋ/ 63
Britain /ˈbrɪtn/ 4
broadband /ˈbroʊdbænd/ 47

238 WORD LIST
brother /braðər/ 10
cash desk /kæʃ desk/ 19
brother-in-law /braθər ɪn lɔː/ 10
cash machine /kæʃ məʃi/ 59
brown /braʊn/ 13, 18, 27
cassette player /kæsɪət plɪər/ 5
crush /kruʃ/ 40
castle /ˈkæstəl/ 35
cruiser /ˈkruəzər/ 59
cashier /ˈkæʃər/ 44
castle (plural) /ˈkæstəlz/ 35
cashier (people) /ˈkæʃərz/ 43, 44
castle (building) /ˈkæstəl/ 35
busy (=a lot of things happening) /ˈbɪzi/ 32, 35
castle (building) /ˈkæstəl/ 35
busy (=a lot of things to do) /ˈbɪzi/ 64
castle (building) /ˈkæstəl/ 35
busy (engaged) /ˈbɪzi/ 69
castle (building) /ˈkæstəl/ 35
busy (at) /ˌbaɪzɪ/ 77
castle (building) /ˈkæstəl/ 35
butcher's /ˈbʌtʃərz/ 37
castle (building) /ˈkæstəl/ 35
butter /ˈbʌtər/ 26
castle (building) /ˈkæstəl/ 35
buy /baɪ/ 20
check-in, check-in desk /ˌtʃek ɪn, ˌtʃek ɪn deseIk/ 56
by /baɪ/ 51
checkout /ˌtʃek əut/ 57
bye bye, bye /ˌbaɪ baɪ, baɪ/ 60
checkout /ˌtʃek əut/ 57
camera as /ˈkæmərə/ 69
car park /ˈkɑːp pɑːk/ 32
camera as /ˈkæmərə/ 69
card as in /kɑːd/ 56
camera as /ˈkæmərə/ 69
card as in /kɑːd/ 56
carpet /ˈkɑrpɛt/ 41
card as in /kɑːd/ 56
carriage /ˈkærɪdʒ/ 30
card as in /kɑːd/ 56
carrot /ˈkærət/ 25
card as in /kɑːd/ 56
carry /ˈkæri/ 11
card as in /kɑːd/ 56
carry on (with something) /ˈkæri ən (wɪð smɑːntɪŋ)/ 73
cash /kæʃ/ 20
cartoon /ˈkɑːtuːn/ 52
cash (money) /kæʃ/ 20
day as in have a nice day /dʌɪ/ 61
daylight /ˈdeɪlaɪt/ 9
dead /dɛd/ 70
deal as in to deal with /dɪə/ 33
declaration /dɪˈklaərən/  33
definite article /ˈdɛfɪnɪt/ 6
degree /ˈdiəri/ 43
delayed /ˈdɛliəd/  56
deleter /dɪˈlɛtər/  42
delicate /ˈdelɪkət/ 37
delicious /ˈdelɪʃəs/  55
deliver /dɪˈlɪvər/  37, 59
dentist /ˈdentɪst/  44
departed /dɪˈpɜrt/  56
department store /dɪˈpɜrtmənt ˈstɔːr/ 37
departure /dɪˈpɜrt/  56
design /dɪˈzaɪn/  45
design and technology /dɪzæn ən ˈteknələdʒi/ 42
desk /dɛsk/  5, 40
desk as in cash desk /dɛsk/  19
dessert /dɪˈzɛrt/  28
details /ˈdiːteɪlz/  55
diary /ˈdaɪəri/  75
dictionary /dɪˈkʃəneri/  5
die /daɪ/  53
difference /ˈdɪfərəns/  7
different /ˈdɪfərənt/  Starter
dining room /ˈdaɪning ˈroʊm/  38
dinner /ˈdɪnər/  17, 79
direct /dɪˈrek,t/  30
director /dɪˈrek,tər/  52
dirty /ˈdɜrti/  35
disagree /dɪˈziɡn/  68
disaster /dɪˈzæstər/  53
discuss /dɪˈskəs/  45
dishwasher /ˈdɪʃwɔr(ə)r/  39
desk /dɛsk/  46
disturb as in please do not disturb /dɪˈstɜːrb/ 33
divorced /dɪˈvɔrs/  15
do as in do a degree, do research /dəʊ/  43
do as in do homework /dəʊ/  42
do as in do the shopping, do the ironing /dəʊ/  17, 37, 39
do as in do your hair /dəʊ/  40
do as in How do you do? /dəʊ/  60
do as in What do you do? /dəʊ/  8, 17
do the ironing /dəʊ əˈraʊn, əˈraʊn/  39
the shopping /dəʊ əˈʃəpɪŋ/  17, 37, 39
do well /dəʊ ˈwel/  42
doctor /ˈdɒktər/  43
document /dəˈkʌmənt/  46
dog /dɒg/  36
don’t worry /ˈdaʊnt ˈwʌri/  66
door as in front door /dɔːr/  38
double /ˈdʌbl̩/  7
double room /ˈdʌbl ˈroʊm/  55
down as in go down /daʊn/  76
download /daʊnˈləʊd/  47, 51
downstairs /daʊnˈsteə/  38
draw /dراʊ/  49
drawers as in chest of drawers /d्रeə/  40
drawing /ˈdraɪŋ/  50
dress /d्रeʃ/  18
drink n /d्रɪŋk/  79
driver /ˈdrɪvər/  44
drop /d्रɔp/  11
drums /d्रʌmz/  51
drummer /ˈdramər/  51
dry /d्रaɪ/  21
duck /dʌk/  24
during the week /dʒuərɪŋ  də ˈwɛk/  17
each /eʃ/  20
each other /eʃ əˈðə(r)/  15
ear /nə(r)/  12
early as in early twenties /ˈnɛl̩/  17
earn /ɜːn/  20, 45
east /eɪst/  34, 35
Easter /ˈɛster/  63
economics /ˌɛkəˈnɔmɪks/  43
economist /ˌɛkəˈnɒmɪst/  43
egg /eɡ/  26
Egypt /ˈeɪdʒpt/  4
Egyptian /ˈeɪdʒpɪən/  4
elderly /ˈɛldərli/  13
electric razor /ˈɛlektrɪk ˈrɛzaʊ(r)/  40
electricity /ˈɛlektrɪsɪtɪ/  40
electricity as in anything else? /ˈɛlɛktrɪsɪtɪ/  26
e-mail address /ˈeməl ˈædres/  9, 47
embarrassed /ɪmˈbærəst/  16
empty adj, v /ˈemptɪ/  39
en suite (on) /ˈswaɪt/  55
end /end/  46
engaged /ɪnˈɡeɪdʒd/  69
engine as in search engine /ˈendʒɪn/  47
engineer /ˈendʒɪnər/  43
engineering /ˈendʒɪnɪərɪŋ/  43
England /ˈɛŋɡəndʒ/  4
English /ˈɪŋɡlɪʃ/  4
enjoy /ɪnˈdʒɔɪ/  48
enjoyable /ɪnˈdʒɔɪəbl/  48
enormous /ɪˈnərməs/  34
enter /ˈɛntər/  20
entrance /ˈentrəns/  33
entry as in no entry /ˈɛntrɪ/  33
envelope /ˈenvələʊp/  59
equipment /ˈɪkwɪpmənt/  49
especially /ˈspeʃəli/  71
espresso /ˌɛskrəˈpɛsə/  27
essay /ˈeɪsɪ/  43
Europe /ɪˈpɔːrəʊ/ 4
even /ˈevn/ 71
evening /ˈɛvning/ 2, 60, 75
event /ˈɛvent/ 53
ever /ˈevər/ 72
every /ˈɛvri/ 17, 29
exactly /ɪɡˈzæktli/ 8
exams /ɛksˈɛmz/ 42
ex-boyfriend /ˈeks ˈbaʊfrend/ 15
excellent /ˈeksɔlent/ 68
exchange rate /ˈɛxʃeindʒ rɛt/ 59
excited /ɪkˈsaɪtɪd/ 16
exciting /ɪkˈsaɪtɪŋ/ 52
excuse me /ɪkˈskjuːz mɪ/ 29, 31
ex-girlfriend /ˈeks ˈɡɜːrlfrend/ 15
ex-husband /ˈeks ˈhʌzbænd/ 15
exit /ˈɛksɪt/ 33
expensive /ɪkˈspensɪv/ 19
explain /ɪkˈsplən/ 7
extremely /ɪkˈstrɛmli/ 71
ex-wife /ˈeks ˈwaɪf/ 15
eye /aɪ/ 12
face /fɛs/ 12
facilities /fəˈsɪlɪtɪz/ 55
fact /fækt/ 35
factory /ˈfæktərɪ/ 45
fall an exam /fɛl ən ʌŋˈzæm/ 42
fall over /fɔːl əˈvaʊər/ 11, 73
false /fɔls/ fals/ Starter
family name /ˈfæmil neɪm/ 8
family tree /ˈfæmil tri/ 10
famous /ˈfeɪməs/ 34, 51
fantastic /ˈfæntæstɪk/ 48
far /fɔr/ 32, 62
Far East /fɔːr ˈɛst/ 4
fare /fɛr/ 20, 30
farm /fɔːm/ 36
farmer /ˈfɔːmər/ 36
fast /fɑːst/ 30, 47
faster /fæstər/ 56
fat /fæt/ 13
father /ˈfɑːðər/ 10
favourite /ˈfɛvərɪt/ 48
feel /fɪl/ 16, 22
feet /fɪt/ 12
few ex in a few /fjuːz/ 36
field /fɪld/ 56
fill /fɪl/ 37
fillet /ˈfɪlɛt/ 28
film /fɪlm/ 17, 52
final score /ˈfɪnəl ˈskaʊər/ 49
finally /ˈfɪnəli/ 78
find /fɪnd/ 54
find out /fɪnd ˈaʊt/ 53, 73
fine (= OK) /fains/ 60, 63
fingers /ˈfɪŋɡəz/ 12
finish /ˈfɪnɪʃ/ 17, 63
fireplace /ˈfaɪəplɛs/ 41
first adv /fɜːst/ 78
first adj /ˈfɜːst/ 8
first half /ˈfɜːst ˈhɑːlf/ 49
first of all /ˈfɜːst əv ˈɔːl/ 78
firstly /ˈfɜːstli/ 78
fish /fɪʃ/ 24
fishing /ˈfɪʃɪŋ/ 50
fit /fɪt/ 19
flat adj /flat/ 69
flat n /flat/ 38
flair /flɛr/ 15
flatpack /ˈflætplek/ 15
flight /flaɪt/ 54, 56
flight closed /flaɪt ˈkləʊzd/ 56
floor (= level of a building) /flɔːr/ 38
floor (= surface you walk on) /flɔːr/ 41
flower /ˈflɔːrər/ 36
flower arranging /ˈflʌər əˈrɛndɪŋ/ 50
fly /flaɪ/ 22
fly /flaɪ/ 57
log /ˈlɒɡ/ 21
foggy /ˈfɒɡi/ 21
folder (= for holding papers) /ˈfəʊldər/ 5
folder (= on a computer) /ˈfəʊldər/ 46
foot /fʊt/ 12
football /ˈfʊbl/ 49
for /fɔːr/ 75
for a while /fɔː ˈwɜːl/ 22
forecast as in weather forecast /ˈfɔːkɔːst/ 53
foreign /ˈfɔːrən/ 54
forename /ˈfɔːrneɪm/ 9
forget /fɔːˈɡet/ 67
fork /fɔrk/ 28
fortunately /ˈfɔrˌtrəʊtli/ 43
forward /fɔrˈwɛrd/ 47
France /fɹæns/ 4
cree /ˈfriː/ 20
freezer /ˈfriːzər/ 39
freezing /ˈfriːzɪŋ/ 16, 21
French /fʁɛ̃/ 4
fresh /fɹɛʃ/ 25
fresh food /fɹɛʃ ˈfɹʊd/ 36
fridge /frɪdʒ/ 39
fried /fraʊd/ 28
friend as in best closest friend /frend/ 15
friendly /ˈfrendli/ 34
frightened /ˈfraɪtɪd/ 16
frightening /ˈfraɪtɪŋ/ 52
from (= origin) /fɹɔm, fɹəm/ 4
from (= time) /fɹəm, fɹəm/ 45
front door /fɹʌnt ˈdɔːr/ 38
frozen /ˈfrʌzn/ 25
frying pan /ˈfɹɛnɪŋ ˈpæn/ 39
full /ful/ 37, 39
full-time /'fɔl tami/ 45
fun /fʌn/ 14, 48
funny /'fʌni/ 14, 52
furniture /'fɜːntiər/ 41

GP (general practitioner)

get /get/ 16, 80
get = (be) /get/ 16, 80
get = (buy) /get/ 80
get = (fetch) /get/ 69
get = (obtain) /get/ 42, 80
get = (receive) /get/ 47, 80
get = (travel by) /get/ 29, 30, 57, 80
get a grade /get a 'grɛd/ 42
get a job /get a 'dʒɒb/ 43
get an email /get an 'eɪməl/ 47
get married /get 'mɜərid/ 10, 15
get off /get 'ɔf/ 11, 29, 30, 56
get on /get 'ɔn/ 11, 29, 30, 56, 73
get on with someone /get 'on wið 'sæmweɪn/ 15
get to know someone /get tu 'nɔʊ 'sæmweɪn/ 15
get to work /get tu 'wɜk/ 17
get up /get 'ʌp/ 17

granddaughter /'ɡrænddɔːtə(r)/ 10
grandfather /'ɡrændfɑːðə(r)/ 10
grandmother /'ɡrændmɔːðə(r)/ 10
grandson /'ɡrændsɔn/ 10
grease /griːz/ 36

Great Britain /'ɡreɪt bɜːtʃə/ 4
Greek /griːk/ 4
Greek (grace) /'ɡreɪk/ 18
grey /'ɡreɪ/ 13, 18
grilled /grɪld/ 28

hand /hænd/ 66
hand = (part of the body) /'hænd/ 12
hand on in give someone a hand /'hænd/ 66
hand luggage /'hænd lʌɡɪdʒ/ 56
handbag /'hændbæɡ/ 18
hands on in shake hands /'hænds/ 60

hoist /hɔɪst/ 12, 40
hairdresser /'heərdrɛsə(r)/ 44
half /hɑːf/ 26, 49
half past /'hɑːf pɑːst/ 2
half-price /'hɑːfl prɑːs/ 20
half-time /'hɑːf tɑːm/ 49
hand /hænd/ 24
hand (s part of the body) /'hænd/ 12
hand on in give someone a hand /'hænd/ 66
hand luggage /'hænd lʌɡɪdʒ/ 56
handbag /'hændbæɡ/ 18
hands on in shake hands /'hændz/ 60

go out /ɡəʊ 'aʊt/ 17, 73
go out for (a meal/a drink) /ɡəʊ 'aʊt fɔː(r)/ 64, 73

good afternoon /ˈɡʊd ɔːfnɔːm/ 60
good at something /ˈɡʊd ət 'sʌmtʃɪŋ/ 42
good evening /ˈɡʊd ˈɪvənɪŋ/ 60
good looking /ˈɡʊd 'lʊknɪŋ/ 13
good luck /ˈɡʊd lʌk/ 61
good morning /ˈɡʊd ˈmɔːnɪŋ/ 60
good to meet you /ˈɡʊd tu ˈmiːt jʊ/ 60
goodbye /ˈɡʊdˌbaɪ/ 60
goodnight /ˈɡʊdˌnait/ 60, 61
grade /ɡreɪd/ 42
graduate n /ˈɡrædjuət/ 43
graduate v /ˈɡrædjuət/ 43
grapes /ɡrɑːps/ 25
ground floor /ɡraʊnd 'fɜːr/ 38
group /ɡrʌp/ 51
grow /ɡrəʊ/ 56
grow up /ɡrəʊ 'ʌp/ 73
guests /ˈgestz/ 55

hair /hɑːr/ 26, 49
deaf /dɛf/ 31, 33
dead /ded/ 33
dead (s dead) /ded/ 33
give someone a hand /ˈɡɪv ˈsʌmən ə 'hænd/ 66
give someone a hand /ˈɡɪv ˈsʌmən ə 'hænd/ 66
happy /'hæpi/ 51
happy birthday /'hæpi 'bedθdei/ 61
happy Christmas /'hæpi 'kreemmas/ 61
happy New Year /'hæpi 'nu: jœr/ 61
hard adv /'hɑrd/ 42
card /kɑrd/ 46
driving /'draivɪŋ/ 46
desperately ever /'desəpatli 'evər/ 17
hardworking /'hɑrdwərkɪŋ/ 14
hat /hæt/ 18
hate /heit/ 48
have /hæv/ 79
have (= do something) /hæv/ 17, 40, 56, 69
have (= eat/drink) /hɑv/ 28
have used in greetings /hæv/ 61
a baby /hæv ə 'bɛbi/ 15
a seat /hæv ə 'siːt/ 27
have got /hɑv ə 'ɡɛt/ 10, 13, 21, 26, 79, 80
have got to /hɑv ə 'ɡɔt tu/ 13, 60
head /hɛd/ 12
headache /'hedek/ 22
health /hɛlθ/ 36
hear /hɪr/ 53
heating as in 'central heating /'hɛtɪŋ/ 55
heavy /'hɛvi/ 21
height /hɪt/ 13
hello /həlo/ 60
help /hɛlp/ 19, 66
helpful /hɛlpfl/ 55, 70
in, in there /hɪn, hən 'θɛr/ 60
high /hɑɪ/ 34, 45
hill /hɪl/ 16
hire /hɪr/ 54
historic /'hɪstɔrɪk/ 35
ten /hɪstəri/ 42
job /dʒɒb/ 39
 hubby /'hʌbi/ 50
hockey as in 'hockey /'hɒki/ 49
hold /həʊld/ 11
holiday /'hɒlɪdeɪ/ 54, 61, 79
home /hɑm/ 38
homework /'hɔməwɜk/ 39, 42
hope /həʊp/ 60
terrible /'terəbl/ 14, 19
horror /'hɔrər/ 52
horse /hɔrs/ 36
hospital /'hɒspɪtəl/ 45
hot /hɔt/ 21
hours /həʊrs/ 45
house /hɔs/ 38
housewife /'hɔʊswɪf/ 44
househusband /'hɔʊshuːzbænd/ 44
How are you? /hɔːz 'əˈjuː/ 60
How are you doing? /hɔːz ðə 'dɔː/ 60
How far? /hɔːz fɑr/ 32, 62
How long (= length) /hɔːl ɒŋ/ 13
How long (= time) /hɔːl ʌn/ 29, 62
How many /hɔː mɛnɪ/ 26, 62
How much /hɔː mʌtʃ/ 13, 26, 45, 59
how often /hɔː ðən, ðəfən/ 62
too old /hɔːz əld/ 8, 10
however /hɔːvər/ 77
humid /'hjuːmɪd/ 21
hundred /'hʌndrəd/ 1
Hungarian /hʌngərɪən/ 4
Hungary /'hʌŋɡəri/ 4
hungry /'hʌŋgrɪ/ 16
hurt /hɜrt/ 22
husband /'hʌzbænd/ 10
hypermart /'haɪpɜrmɑrt/ 37
ICT (information communication technology) /aɪ sɪ: tɪk ({fornæm}fæn kæmju'nækʃən tek nɔlsdʒi)/ 42
IT (information technology) /aɪ tɪk ({fornæm}fæn tek nɔlsdʒi)/ 42
ice /aɪs/ 21
ice cream /aɪs 'kriːm/ 28
ice hockey /aɪs hɒki/ 49
icon /aɪkɒn/ 46
icy /'aɪsɪ/ 21
I'd like to /aɪd 'laɪ tʊ/ 26, 27
I'd like to ask /aɪd 'ækst/ 25
I'd love to /aɪd 'lʌv tʊ/ 13, 64
idea /aɪˈdɪə/ 65
if /ɪf/ 78
ill as be/feel ill /ɪl/ 16, 22
I'll leave it/them /aɪ l ɪt, ðəm/ 19
I'm afraid /aɪm əˈfeəd/ 55, 63, 64
I'm afraid not /aɪm əˈfeəd əˈnəʊ/ 55
impossible /aɪmˈpɒsəbl/ 70
inn (= place) /ɪn/ 76
in (= part) /ɪn/ 52
in (= time) /ɪn/ 2, 74
in as in Who's in it? /ɪn/ 52
in a minute /ɪn ə 'mɪnɪt/ 75
in advance /ɪn ðə 'ædvəns/ 30
in front of /fɔːnt əv/ 76
in love /ɪn lʌv/ 16
in the twenty, etc. /ɪn (tənti, tɛnti)/ 13
in order to /ɪn əˈɔrdə tʊ/ 77
in the north /ɪn ðə nɔːθ/ 34
in the paper /ɪn ðə 'pærəp/ 53
in inbox /ɪn 'ɪnbox/ 47
included as included in the price /ɪnkluːd/ 55
indefinite article /ɪndɪˈfɪnit əˈtʃɪkl/ 6
India /ˈɪndə/ 4
Indian /ˈɪndiən/ 4
indoors /ˈɪndɔːrs/ 37
industrial /ɪnˈdʌstriəl/ 35
information /ɪnˈfɔrmeɪʃn/ 8
inland /ˈɪnlænd/ 14
inside /ɪnˈsaɪd/ 38
instrument as in musical instrument /ɪnˈstrıːnmənt/ 50
insurance /ɪnˈʃərəns/ 54
intelligent /ɪnˈtelɪdʒənt/ 14
interested /ɪnˈtræstɪd/ 48
interesting /ɪnˈtræstɪŋ/ 35, 48
internet /ɪntərˈnet/ 47
internet access /ɪntərˈnet əˈkɛs/ 55
into /ˈɪntoʊ/; ‘ɪntı/ 59, 76, 77
invite /ɪnˈvایt/ 64
Ireland /ˈaɪrənd/ 4
ironing /ˈaɪrənɪŋ/ 39
irregular /ɪrˈdʒuːlər/ 6
irritating /ɪrˌɪteɪtɪŋ/ 70
Italian /ɪtəˈleɪn/ 4
Italy /ɪtəˈleɪ/ 4
jacket /ˈdʒækət/ 18
jail /dʒeɪl/ 26
Japanese /ˌdʒəpnɪˈziə/ 4
jar /dʒɔːr/ 26
jeans /dʒɛnz/ 18
job /dʒɔb/ 8, 42
journalism /dʒɜːrnlɪzɪzm/ 43
journey /dʒʊrni/ 30, 61, 79
juice as in orange juice /dʒuːs/ 27
jump /dʒʌmp/ 11
jumper /ˈdʒʌmpər/ 18
junk /dʒʌŋk/ 32
just as in just keep going /dʒʌst/ 31
just a moment /ˈdʒʌst əˈməʊnt/ 69
just after /ˈdʒʌst ˈɔːftə(r)/ 2
just over /ˈdʒʌst əˈvaʊə(r)/ 26, 35
just under /ˈdʒʌst əˈnder(r)/ 26, 35
keep as in keep something /keɪp/ 48
keep going /keɪp ˈgoʊɪŋ/ 31
keyboard /ˈkɪbərd/ 46
kilo /ˈkɪloʊ/ 26
kilometres /ˈkɪləˌmɛtəz, ˈkɪləˈmɛtəz/ 31, 34
kind adj /kʌnd/ 14
kind as in that's very kind of you /ˈkʌnd/ 66
kind as in What kind...? /ˈkʌnd/ 52, 62
kitchen /ˈkɪtʃən/ 38
knife /ˈnaɪf/ 28
know /nəʊ/ 7, 31
know as in get to know /nəʊ/ 15
Korean /ˌkɔrɪˈreɪn/ 4
ladies /ˈleɪdiz/ 33
lack /læk/ 36
large /lɑːrɡ/ 24
lamp /læmp/ 41
land /lænd/ 56
language /ˈlæŋwɪdʒ/ 4
lawn /lɔːn/ 32
laptop /ˈlæptəp/ 46
large /ˈlærɡ/ 19
last adj /læst/ 30
last v /læst/ 43
last night, last week, last year, etc. /læst ‘næt, ‘wik, ‘jʊst/ 73
last stop /læst ‘stɑːp/ 29
late as in I get up late /ˈleɪt/ 17
late as in Sorry I'm late /ˈleɪt/ 67
late (fifties) /ˈleɪt (ˈfɪfti)/ 13
later as in See you later /ˈleɪtər/ 60, 75
laugh /lɔːf/ 14
law /lɔː/ 43
lawyer /ˈlɔːər(ə)r/ 43
lazy /ˈlæzi/ 14
lead v /lɛd/ 49
lead singer /ˈled ˈsɛŋə(r)/ 51
league /lɛɡ/ 49
leave as in I'll leave it/ them /lɪv/ 19
leave v (of a train) /lɪv/ 10, 42
leave home /lɪv ‘həʊm/ 17
leave school /lɪv ‘skooəl/ 42
left /lɛft/ 11
leg /lez/ 12, 22
lemon /ˈlemən/ 25
lend /lɛnd/ 63
length as in medium-length /ˈlemθ/ 13
lesson /ˈlɛsn/ 42
let as in let me /ˈleɪt/ 66
let's /lɛts/ 65
letter /ˈleɪtər/ 59
let it rain /ˈlet ɪt ˈreɪn/ 59
lettuce /ˈlɛtʃəs/ 25
level /ˈlevəl/ 9
library /ˈlaɪbrerɪ/ 43
lie /laɪ/ 57
lie down /laɪ ˈdɔʊn/ 11, 22, 73
lift n /lɪft/ 38
lift as in give someone a lift /ˈlɪft/ 66
light adj /ˈlaɪt/ 3, 18
light n /ˈlaɪt/ 41
lightning /ˈlaɪtnɪŋ/ 21
like v /lɪk/ 48
like as in What's he/she/it like? /lɪk/ 14, 23, 62
like as in would like /lɪk/ 26, 27, 28, 55, 64

WORD LIST 245
limit as in speed limit /limit/ 32
line /ləIn/ 68
lip /lIp/ 12
listen to /lIsn tə/ 30, 53
literature /ˌlitəˈræri/ 42
litter /ˈlitəri/ 26
little /ˈlɪtI/ 19
little as in a little /ˈlɪtə/ 71
living room /lɪvɪŋ ruːm/ 38
location /ləˈkæʃən/ 35
lonely /ˈlɒnli/ 36
long ad/ /lɒŋ/ 13, 19
long as in How long... /lɒŋ/ 29, 62
long as in a metre long /lɒŋ/ 29
long hours /lɒŋ ˈaʊəz/ 45
look /lʊk/ 19
look after /lʊk ˈʌfter/ 36
look around /lʊk ˈrəʊnd/ 58
look something up /lʊk ˈsʌmtʃəm ʌp/ 73
loue /lʊz/ 19
lorry driver /ˈlɒri drɑːvə(r)/ 44
lose /lʊz/ 49, 67
lot as in a lot, a lot of /lət/ 21
lots as in to lots /lots/ 35
lottery /ˈlɒtəri/ 20
love /lʌv/ 48
love story /ˈlʌv ˈstəri/ 52
lovely /ˈlʌvli/ 19, 61
low as in low wages /ləʊ/ 45
luck as in good luck /lʌk/ 61
luggage /ˈlʌɡidʒ/ 56
lunch /lʌntʃ/ 79

MA (Master of Arts) /mεtə ˈɔr (mæstər əv ərts)/ 43
MP3 player /ˈɛm pi: ˈbri: plɛsə(r)/ 47
Mr /ˈmɛstər/ 9
Mrs /ˈmɛstəs/ 9
Ms /mɛstəs/ 9
MSc (Master of Science) /mεtə ˈɔs (mæstə əv ˈsɛnsə)/ 43
machine as in cash machine /məˈkɛʃən/ 59
machine as in washing machine /məˈkɛʃən/ 39
mad /mæd/ 70
magazine /ˈmæɡəˌzi:n/ 53
main course /ˈmɛm kruːs/ 28
main road /ˈmɛm rəʊd/ 32
major /ˈmeɪdʒə(r)/ 34
make (= perform an action) /meɪk/ 45
make (= produce) /meɪk/ 39, 46
make-up /meɪk ʌp/ 40
manager /ˈmændər/ 43
Mandarin /ˈmændərɪn/ 4
mango /ˈmæŋgoʊ/ 25
many as in how many /ˈmæni/ 26, 61
map /mæp/ 58
marital status /ˈmærɪtl ˈstɛtəs/ 9
mark /mɑːrk/ 42
market /ˈmærkɪt/ 35, 37
married /ˈmærɪd/ 8
married as in get married /ˈmærɪd/ 10, 15
match n (= game) /mætʃ/ 49
matches n (= to start a fire) /mætʃɪz/ 26
maths (mathematics) /mæθs/ 42
matter as in it doesn’t matter /ˈmætə(r)/ 67
matter as in What’s the matter? /ˈmætə(r)/ 16, 22
maybe /ˈmeɪbi/ 65
meal /miːl/ 28, 64
mean /miːn/ 7
meaning /ˈmiːnɪŋ/ 7
meet /miːt/ 24
medium /ˈmiːdiəm/ 53
medicine (= subject of study) /ˈmiːdʒən/ 43
medicine (e.g. aspirin) /ˈmiːdʒən, ˈmiːdʒən/ 23
medium (as in size) /ˈmiːdʒən/ 19
medium (as in steak) /ˈmiːdʒən/ 28
medium length /ˈmiːdʒən ˈlɛŋθ/ 13
medium-sized /ˈmiːdʒəd ˈsɜːzd/ 35
meet (= come together) /miːt/ 45
meet (= for the first time) /miːt/ 15, 60
meet as in nice/good to meet you /miːt/ 60
meeting /ˈmiːtɪŋ/ 45
memory stick /ˈmiːməri ˈstɪk/ 46
men /ˈmɛn/ 28
merry Christmas /ˈmerɪ ˈkrisməs/ 61
message /ˈmesidʒ/ 47
message as in text message /ˈmesidʒ/ 69
Mexican /ˈmeksɪkən/ 4
Mexico /ˈmeksɪkəʊ/ 4
microwave /ˈmɪkraʊəreq/ 39
midday /ˈmiːdəˈdeɪ/ 2
middle /ˈmiːdl/ 46
middle-aged /ˈmiːdl ˈeɪdʒɪd/ 13
Middle East /ˈmiːdl ˈest/ 4
midnight /ˈmiːdnɪt/ 2
might /mɪt/ 54
mile /maɪl/ 35
miles an hour /ˈmaɪlz ən ˈauə(r)/ 32
milk /mɪlk/ 26, 27
million /ˈmɪljən/ 1
mind as in Do you mind...? /mind/ 63
mind as in never mind /mind/ 55, 67
mineral water /ˈmɪnərəl wɔːtər/ 28
minibar /ˈmɪnɪbɑːr/ 55
mirror /ˈmɪrər/ 40
miss v /mɪs/ 30
Miss /mɪs/ 9
missing /ˈmɪsnɪŋ/ 49
mistake /ˈmɪsteɪk/ 49
Starter
mixed salad /ˈmɪksd ˈsɛld/ 28
mobile number /ˈmɔːbl nʌmbə(r)/ 69
modern /'mədən/ 35, 38
modern languages /'mədən 'lɛŋgwɪdʒɪz/ 42
moment as in at the moment /'məʊment/ 69, 75
moment as in just a moment /'məʊment/ 69
monitor /'mɒnɪtər/ 46
mouth /məʊθ/ 1
more as in some more /mɔː(r)/ 28
morning /'mɔːrɪŋ/ 2
morning as in good morning /'mɔːrɪŋ/ 60
mosque /'mɒs/ 35
most /mɒst/ 53
mother /'mʌðər/ 10
motor /'məʊtər/ 6
motorway /'məʊtərweɪ/ 32
mountain /'mʌntən/ 34
mouse /mɔʊs/ 46
mouse mat /'mɔʊs mæt/ 46
moustache /'məʊstʃeɪ/ 13
mouth /məʊθ/ 12
move /məʊv/ 46
movie /'məʊvɪ/ 52
much as in how much /'mʌtʃ/ 13, 26, 45, 59
much as in nothing much /'mʌtʃ/ 53
must /mʌst/ 10
museum /'mjuːzɪəm/ 35, 58
mushroom /'mʌʃrʊm/ 25
music /'mjuːzɪk/ 42, 50
musical /'mjuːzɪkl/ 50
muscles /'mʌsklz/ 24
must /mʌst/ 60
name as in family name, first name /'nэm/ 8
napkin /'næpkɪn/ 28
narrow /'nærəʊ/ 70
nationality /'næʃənləti/ 4
near /'nɪə(r)/ 29, 76
nearest /'nɪəst/ 62
neatly /'nɪtli/ 2
necessary /'nɛsəsəri/ 70
neck /nɛk/ 12
need /nɪd/ 19, 23, 66
neighbours /'nɛbərз/ 38
neb /'nɛb/ 10
neurology /'nju:ərəlɔdʒi/ 16
net /nɛt/ 49
never /'nəvrə/ 17
never mind /'nəvədæmd/ 55, 67
New Year /'niːər 'jɛər/ 61
New Year's Day /'niːər jɛəz 'deɪ/ 3
news /'njuːz/ 53
newsagent's /'njuːzɛndʒəntz/ 37
newspaper /'njuːzpeɪpə(r)/ 53
next (of a train) /'nektst/ 30
next stop /'nektst stəʊp/ 29
next to /'nekt təʊ tə/ 76
next week /'nekt wɛk/ 75
nice /nɪs/ 14, 19, 79
nice as in have a nice day/ evening /'nɪs/ 61
nice to meet you /nɪs tə 'mɪt juz/ 60
nice /nɪs/ 10
night (= saying goodnight) /'nɪt/ 60
night as in a night /'nɪt/ 2
night as in #43 a night /'nɪt/ 55
night as in last night /'nɪt/ 75
nighttime /'nɪtɪm/ 35
nil /nɪl/ 49
no entry /nəʊ 'entri/ 33
no exit /nəʊ 'eksɪt/ 33
no parking /nəʊ 'pærkɪŋ/ 33
no problem /'nəʊ prəbləm/ 63
no smoking /nəʊ 'smaʊkɪŋ/ 33
noisy /'nɔɪzi/ 70
none /nɔn/ 53
noodles /'nʌndəls/ 26
nominally /'nəʊmənəli/ 17
north /nɔrθ/ 34, 35
North America /'nɔ:ð ə'mɛrɪkəs/ 4
north-east /'nɔrθ 'est/ 35
north-west /'nɔrθ 'west/ 35
Northern Ireland /'nɔrθən 'aɪrənd/ 4
none /nəʊn/ 12
not bad /nəʊt 'bæd/ 60
notebook /'nəʊtbʊk/ 5
notes /'nəʊts/ 20, 56
nothing as in there's nothing to do /'nʌθɪŋ/ 35
nothing much /'nʌθɪŋ 'mʌtʃ/ 53
nothing to declare /'nʌθɪŋ tə dɪk'leɪr/ 33
noticeboard /'nəʊtɪsboʊd/ 5
noun /nəʊn/ 6
number as in phone number /'nʌmə(r)/ 69
number as in PIN number /'nʌmə(r)/ 20
number as in wrong number /'nʌmə(r)/ 69
number 1 (in the singles chart) /'nʌmbə 'wʌn/ 51
nurse /nɜːs/ 44
nursery school /'nɜːsəri ˈskjuːl/ 42
occasionally /'ɔkˈsiːmplɪli/ 17
occupation /'ɔkˈpeɪʃən/ 9
o'clock (of time) /ɔk'laʊk/ 2
o'clock (of a train) /ɔk'laʊk/ 2
odd /'əd/ 70
of course /ɒv ˈkɔːs/ 28, 63
offer /'ɒfə(r)/ 66
office as in post office /'ɒfɪs/ 59
office as in ticket office /'əfɪs/ 30
officer as in police officer /'əfɪsə(r)/ 44
often /'ɒfən, ˈɒfən/ 17
often as in how often /'ɒfən, ˈɒfən/ 62
oil /əʊl/ 28
old /əʊld/ 8, 10
olive oil /'əʊlɪv əʊl/ 26
olives /'əʊl vɪz/ 26
on (preposition of place) /ɒn/ 76
on (preposition of time) /ɪn/ 74
on a river /ɒn a rɪˈvɜːr/ 35
on holiday /ɒn ˈhɒlədi, ði-/ 54
on my own /ɒn mɛɪ ˈɔn/ 14
on the coast /ɒn daˈkɒst ˈkɔst/ 34, 35
on the first floor /ɒn da fiɜːrst ˈflɔːr/ 38
on the phone /ɒn ðə fəʊn/ 69
on time /ɒn ˈtaɪm/ 56
on TV/on the radio
/ɒn ɪv, ɒn do ˈredɪəʊ/ 53
on as in What’s on? /ɒn ˈziː/ 52
once /wʌns/ 17
onion /ˈɒnjən/ 25
online /ˈɒnlain, ˈenlaɪn/ 20, 47
only abbr. /ˈɒnli/ 70
only abbr. /ˈɑːnli/ 71
open /ˈəʊpən/ 11, 46, 62
open a singer /ˈʌpə sɪŋər/ 51
opinion /ˈɒpɪnɪən/ 35, 53, 68
opposite abbr. /ˈɔpəzɪt/ Starter, 7
opposition prep /ˈɔpəzɪʃən/ 31, 76
opposites as in complete opposites /ˈɔpəzɪts/ 14
or so as in for an hour or so /əˈsɔː/ 57
orange abbr. /ˈɔrɪndʒ/ 18
orange n /ˈɔrɪndʒ/ 25
orange juice /ˈɔrɪndʒ dʒuːz/ 27
orchestra /ˈɔrkestrə/ 51
order /ˈɔrdr/ 27, 28
order as in order to /ˈɔrdr(ə)/ 77
order as in out of order /ˈɔrdr(ə)z/ 29
organise /ˈɔrɡənaɪz/ 45
organised /ˈɔrɡənaɪzd/ 14
other as in each other /ˈʌðər/ 15
out of /aʊt əv/ 76
out of order /aʊt əv ˈɔrdr/ 33
outdoors /aʊt əˈdɔːrz/ 37
outside adv /aʊtˈsaɪd/ 38
outside prep /aʊtˈsaɪd/ 29
oven /ˈʌvn/ 39
over (above/higher than something) /ˈɔvər/ 76
over (more than a number, price, etc.) /ˈəʊvər/ 26, 35
overtake /ˈəʊvətkeɪk/ 32
overweight /əʊvərˌwɛt/ 13
own prep /əʊn/ 36
own as in on my own /əʊn/ 14
PC (personal computer) /piːˈsɪː/ 46
PhD (Doctor of Philosophy) /piː ˈdɛktaɪər əv ˌfɪlsəˈfɪ/ 43
p.m. /piː ɪm/ 2
pack /pæk/ 54
packet /ˈpækɪt/ 26
pain /peɪn/ 22
pair /peər/ 18
palace /ˈpeɪls/ 35
pale /peɪl/ 18
pan as in frying pan /pæn/ 39
paper (newspaper) /ˈpeɪpə(r)/ 53
paper as in piece of paper /ˈpeɪpər/ 5
paper shop /ˈpeɪpər ʃɒp/ 37
parcel /ˈpærəl/ 39
parents /ˈpeərənts/ 10
park n /pɑːk/ 35
park v /pɑːk/ 38
park as in car park /pɑːk/ 32
parking /ˈpɑːkɪŋ/ 38, 55
part-time adj /ˈpɑːt ˈtɜːm/ 45
participate as in past participle /pɑːtɪsɪˈpleɪ/ 6
particularly /pəˈtɪkspəli/ 71
partner /ˈpɑːtnər/ 15
party /ˈpɑːti/ 64
pass an exam /pɑːs an əmˈɡreɪnt/ 42
passenger /ˈpæsəndʒər/ 30, 56
passport /ˈpəsətʃɔːr/ 54
passport control /ˈpəsətʃɔːr ˈkəntrəl/ 56
past /ˈpɑːst/ 76
past as in five past six /pɑːst/ 2
past participle /pɑːst pɑːtɪsɪˈpleɪ/ 6
pasta /ˈpɑːstə/ 26
paste /ˈpɑːst/ 46
path /ˈpæθ/ 36
pavement /ˈpævɪment/ 32
pay /ˈpeɪ/ 19
PE (physical education) /piː iː (ˈfɪzɪkəl ˈɛdʒuˈkeɪʃn)/ 42
peace /piːs/ 53
peach /piːtʃ/ 25
pear /ˈpɪər/ 25
peas /piːz/ 25
pedestrian crossing /ˈpɛdɪstrɪən ˈkrosɪŋ/ 32
pen /ˈpɛn/ 5
pen as in board pen /ˈpɛn/ 5
pencil /ˈpɛnsl/ 5
pencil sharpeners /ˈpɛnsl ˈʃeɪpərrz/ 5
pepper (spice) /ˈpepər/ 28
pepper (vegetable) /ˈpepərəs/ 25
per cent /pɜːr ˈsɛnt/ 59
perfect /ˈpɜːfɪkt/ 57
perform /pɜːrˈfɔːm/ 51
perfume /ˈpɜːfjuːm/ 40
perhaps /ˈpɜːrbs/ 54, 65
person /ˈpɜːsrən/ 13
personally /ˈpɜːsnəli/ 68
petrol station /ˈpɜːtrəl ˈsteɪʃn/ 12
pharmacy /ˈfɑːməsɪ/ 22
phone n, v /fəʊn/ 69
phone call /'foun kɔl/ 45
phone number /'foun nəmbə(r)/ 69
phone someone back /'foun somwən 'bæk/ 69
photos /'fəʊtəʊz/ 58
phrase /'fɜːrəz/ 6
physics /'fɪzɪks/ 42
plastic /'plæstɪk/ 51
plano /'plænəʊ/ 51
pick up /'pɪk 'ʌp/ 11
picture /'pɪktʃə/ 41
piece /'piːs/ 5, 26, 41
pig /'pɪɡ/ 24
pilot /'pilaʊt/ 44
PIN (personal identification number) /'pɪn (pərsənl aɪdɛntɪfɪk keɪʃə nəmbə) 20
pineapple /'pɪnəprəʊ/ 25
pink /'pɪŋk/ 18
pitch /'pɪtʃ/ 49
place /'pleɪs/ 35, 49
places as in change places /'pleɪsiz/ 63
plane /'pleɪn/ 56
plaster /'plæstə(r)/ 23
plate /'plæt/ 28
platform /'plætfrm/ 30
play /'pleɪ/ 17, 50
player as in cassette player, CD player /'pleɪə(r)/ 5
player as in DVD player /'pleɪə(r)/ 41
player as in MP3 player /'pleɪə(r)/ 47
pleasant /'pleɪznt/ 14, 21
please /'pliːz/ 26, 27, 59, 63, 66, 69
please do not disturb /'pliːz dəʊ nə dɪstrʌb/ 33
plural noun /'plɔrəl noʊn/ 6
points /pɔɪnts/ 49
Poland /'pɔlnənd/ 4
Police officer /'pɔlɪs oʊfɪsə(r)/ 44
Polish /'pɔlɪʃ/ 4
politician /'pəltɪʃən/ 43
politics /'pəlɪtɪks/ 43
polluted /'pəluːtɪd/ 35
poor /'pʊə(r)/ 70
popular /'pʊpjʊlə(r)/ 14, 50
population /'pɒpə'leɪʃən/ 35
pool /'pʊl/ 24
Portugal /'pɔrtjuːɡəl/ 4
Portuguese /pɔrtjuː'ɡiːz/ 4
possible /'pɒsəbl/ 70
possibly /'pɒsəblɪ/ 63
post /'pəʊst/ 59
post office /'pəʊst əˈfɪs/ 59
postbox /'pəʊstbɒks/ 59
postcode /'pəʊstkəʊd/ 59
postman /'pəʊstmæn/ 59
postwoman /'pəʊstwʊmən/ 59
potato /'pɒtətəʊ/ 25
prawns /'prɔrnz/ 24
prefer /'prɛfə(r)/ 37, 48, 65, 68
preposition /'prɛspəzənʃən/ 6
price /'prɪs/ 20, 55
primary school /'prɪməri skjuːl/ 42
print /'prɪnt/ 46
print something out /'prɪnt smʌtʃ 'aut/ 46
printer /'prɪntə(r)/ 46
printout /'prɪntəut/ 46
private school /'prɪvət skjuːl/ 42
problem as in no problem /'prɔbləm/ 63
programme /'prəʊɡræm/ 53
pronoun /'prəʊnən/ 6
pronounce /'prəʊnəns/ 7
psychologist /'sɛksɪələdʒɪst/ 43
psychology /'sɛksɪələdʒi/ 43
public transport /ˈpʌblɪk ˈtrʌnspɔːrt/ 36
puddle /'pʊdl/ 42
pull /'pʊl/ 11
pupil /'pjuːpəl/ 59
put (= place) /pʊt/ 59
put in /'pʊt ɪn/ 20
put something away /'pʊt sʌmθɪŋ əˈweɪ/ 39
put something down /'pʊt sʌmθɪŋ ˈdaʊn/ 11
put something on /'pʊt sʌmθɪŋ ˈɒn/ 40, 73
quarter (past/tense) /'kwɔːtər (pɑːst/ˈtens)/ 2
queue /kjuː/ 37
queue here /kjuː ˈhɪɜː/ 29
quick /ˈkwɪk/ 47
quiet (= about a person) /ˈkwɪt/ 14
quiet (= not busy) /ˈkwɪt/ 32, 35
quiet (= not noisy) /ˈkwɪt/ 70
quite /kwest/ 48, 71
racket /ˈrækət/ 49
radiator /ˈriːdɪətər/ 41
radio /ˈreɪdiəʊ/ 53
railway station /ˈreɪlweɪ steɪʃən/ 31
rain, n. v. /rɛn/ 21
raincoat /ˈreɪnkəʊt/ 18
raw /rɔː/ 27
razor /ˈreɪzə(r)/ 40
religion (religious education) /'relɪʒən (rɛlɪdʒəs ɪdʒə keaʃən) 42
read /rɛd/ 50
ready /ˈreidi/ 28
really /ˈriːəli/ 14, 48, 67, 71
receipt /rɪˈseɪkt/ 20
receive /rɪˈsiːv/ 47
recluse as in baggage reclaim /ˈrɪkləm/ 56
recommend /rekmend/ 55, 62
red /red/ 18
refuse /refjuz/ 66
regular /'regjuleə/ 6
relationship /ri'slefnip/ 15
relative /ri'lsti/ 10
relax /'relæks/ 57
relaxed /'relæksid/ 14
remember /'rɛmembə(r)/ 7, 67
rent /rent/ 57
repair /'ri'peə(r)/ 50
reply /'ripli/ 47
report /rə'pɔrt/ 45
reporter /'rɔpərə(r)/ 43, 53
research /ri'sɛkʃən/ 43
reserve /ri'zərv/ 30
resort /'resɔrt/ 57
rest as in have a rest /rest/ 79
results /ri'zʌltz/ 42
retired /'rɪtərd/ 44
return /rɪ'tnər/ 30
review /rɪ'vjuː/ 52
rice /rɪs/ 26
rich /rɪtʃ/ 70
ride /raɪd/ 11, 36
right (= correct) /raɪt/ 7
right (= not left) /raɪt/ 31
right (= OK) /raɪt/ 55
ring r (of a bell) /rɪng/ 29
ring r (phone) /rɪng/ 69
ring someone back /ˈrɪŋ səˈbæk/ 69
rink /rɪŋk/ 49
ripe /rɪp/ 26
river /ˈrɪvər/ 34
road as in main road /ˈrɔːd/ 32
road sign /ˈrɔːd sɪŋ/ 32
roast /raʊst/ 28
roll /rəʊl/ 27
romantic /rəʊ'mæntɪk/ 52
room service /ˈruːm sərvɪs/ 55
roundabout /ˈraʊndəbaʊt/ 32
route /rəʊt/ 29
rubber /ˈrʌbər/ 5
rubbish /ˈrʌbɪʃ/ 38
rubbish bin /ˈrʌbɪʃ bɪn/ 39
rude /rjuːd/ 67
rug /rʌɡ/ 41
rugby /ˈrʌɡbi/ 49
ruler /ˈrʌlər/ 5
run r (run) /rʌn/ 79
run r (run) /rʌn/ 11, 29
rush hour /ˈrʌʃ ˈhʌrəʊ/ 32
Russia /ˈrʌʃə/ 4
Russian /ˈrʌʃən/ 4
sad /sæd/ 16
safe /sef/ 35
salad as in mixed salad /ˈsæləd/ 28
salary /ˈseɪleri/ 45
sale /seɪl/ 33
salmon /ˈsɑːlmən/ 24
salt /sɔlt/ 28
same /seɪm/ Starter
same as in the same to you /seɪm/ 61
sandals /ˈsandlz/ 18
sandwich /ˈsandwiʃ/ 27
satellite TV /ˈsætəleit tv/ 55
save /seɪv/ 28
sausage /ˈsɔːzij/ 19
saucer /ˈsɔːsə(r)/ 39
Saudi /'sɔːdi/ 4
Saudia Arabia /'sɔːdi ɪərijə/ 4
sauces /ˈsɔːsɛz/ 24
save (= not waste) /seɪv/ 20
save (= store) /seɪv/ 46
say /seɪ/ 7
scales /skeɪlz/ 56, 59
scared /skəd/ 16
scarf /skɑːf/ 18
school /skjuːl/ 42
score n, v /skɔːr(r)/ 49
Scotland /ˈskɒntən/ 4
screen /skriːn/ 46
sea /siː/ 57
seafood /ˈseɪfləʊd/ 24
search engine /ˈseŋˈɡɪn/ 47
season /ˈseɪzn/ 3
seat /siːt/ 27, 30
seat belt /ˈsiːt bɛlt/ 56
secondary school /ˈsekəndri skjuːl/ 42
secretary /ˈsekrətri/ 44
sec (= meet or visit) /sɛk/ 15, 60
see (= watch) /siː/ 17, 52, 53
See you later /siː juː ˈleɪtər/ 60, 75
self-employed /ˈself ɪmˈplɔɪd/ 44
sell /sɛl/ 20
send /sɛnt/ 45, 47, 59, 69
serious /ˈsɛriəs/ 14
service as in room service /ˈsɜːvɪs/ 55
set /sɛt/ 49
shake hands /ʃeɪk ˈhændz/ 60
shall I (= offer) /ʃəl ɪ/ 66
shall we (= suggestion) /ʃəl wi/ 65
shame /ʃeɪm/ 55
shampoo /ʃaʊməʊ/ 40
share /ʃeə(r)/ 14
sharpen as in pencil sharpener /ˈʃærpən(r)/ 5
shave /ʃeɪv/ 40
sheep /ʃiːp/ 24
shout /ʃaʊt/ 40
shell /ʃel/ 39
shirt /ʃɜːt/ 18
donut /ˈdɒnət/ 18
shoe /ʃuː/ 18
shooting /ˈʃuːtnɪŋ/ 50
shop /ʃɔp/ 37
shop assistant /ˈʃɒp ˈæsəstənt/ 19, 44
shopping as in do the shopping /ˈʃɒpɪŋ/ 17, 37, 39
shopping centre /ˈʃɒpɪŋ sɛntə(r)/ 37
short /ʃɔrt/ 13, 19
shorts /ʃɔrts/ 57
should /ʃəʊld/ 22, 58
shoulder /ʃʊldə(r)/ 12
shower n (in the bathroom) /ˈʃɔʊə(r)/ 17, 40, 55
shower n (as rain) /ˈʃɔʊə(r)/ 21
shut /ʃʌt/ 11, 62
shy /ʃaɪ/ 14
sticky /ˈstɪkɪ/ 22
sightseeing /ˈsaɪtsiːɪŋ/ 58
sign /saɪn/ 39
sign as in road sign /ˈsaɪn/ 32
signature /ˈsaɪgnətʃʊr/ 9
since /saɪns/ 75
sing /sɪŋ/ 50
singer /ˈsaɪŋə(r)/ 50, 51
single n (= song) /ˈsɪŋgl/ 51
single n (= ticket) /ˈsɪŋgl/ 30
single adj (= for one) /ˈsɪŋgl/ 40, 55
single adj (= not married) /ˈsɪŋgl/ 8
singles chart /ˈsɪŋglz ˈtʃeɪtʃ/ 51
singular noun /sɪŋɡəlˈnʌn/ 6
stink /stɪŋk/ 19
sister /ˈsɪstə(r)/ 10
sister-in-law /ˈsɪstər ɪn ˈlɔː/ 10
sit down /sɪt ˈdaʊn/ 11, 73
size /saɪz/ 19, 35
skiing /ˈskiːɪŋ/ 50
skirt /ˈskɜːrt/ 18
sky /skeɪ/ 36
sleep /sliːp/ 17, 61
slim /slɪm/ 13
slow /sləʊ/ 30, 47
small /smaʊl/ 19
smart /smɑːrt/ 19
smoking as in smoking /ˈsmɔʊkɪŋ/ 33
snow n, v /ˈsnəʊ/ 21
so /soʊ/ 77
so as in an hour or so /soʊ/ 57
soup /ˈsʊp/ 40
soup (= soup opera) /ˈsʊp/ 53
sociable /ˈsəʊʃəbl/ 14
sock /ˈsɒk/ 18
sold /ˈsɔld/ 41
software engineer /ˈsɔrware ˈɛndʒənər/ 43
soldier /ˈsɔldə(r)/ 44
some /sʌm, som/ 53
something /ˈsʌmtʃɪŋ/ 23
sometimes /ˈsʌmtaɪmz/ 17
son /sɑːn/ 10
song /sɔŋ/ 50
soon /suːn/ 60, 75
soon /suːn/ 22
sorry /ˈsɔrɪ/ 63, 64, 67
sounds /saʊndz/ 64
soup /suːp/ 28
south /sɔʊθ/ 34, 35
South Korea /ˈsaʊθ kərə/ 4
south-east /ˈsaʊθ ˈeɪst/ 35
south-west /ˈsaʊθ ˈwest/ 35
spice /ˈspɪs/ 28
Spain /ˈspæn/ 4
Spanish /ˈspænɪʃ/ 4
sparkling /ˈspɑːkliŋ/ 28
spare /spɪrk/ 69
spare /ˈspær/ 46
speaking /ˈspɪkɪŋ/ 69
speed camera /ˈspɪd kəməˈrɑː/ 32
speed limit /ˈspɪd ˈlɪmt/ 32
spell /spel/ 7
spend (money) /spend (ˈmʌni)/ 20
spend (time) /spend (ˈtaɪm)/ 10, 45, 50
split up /ˈspɪt ˈʌp/ 15
spoon /ˈspɔʊn/ 28
sporty /ˈspɔrteɪ/ 14
spring /ˈspɹɪŋ/ 3
square /ˈskweə(r)/ 35
squid /skwɪd/ 24
staff /stæf/ 55
stairs /stɛər/ 38
stair /stɛər/ 37
stamp /stæmp/ 59
stand up /ˈstænd ˈʌp/ 11, 73
star /ˈstɑːr/ 52
start /stɑːrt/ 42
starter /ˈstɑːrtə(r)/ 28
state school /ˈsteɪt ˈskuːl/ 42
station as in petrol station /ˈsteɪʃən/ 32
station as in railway station /ˈsteɪʃən/ 31
statue /ˈsteɪʃuː/ 35
status as in marital status /ˈsteɪʃəz/ 9
stay (= live for a short period) n, v /stei/ 55
stay at school /ˈstei ət ˈskuːl/ 42
stay in bed /ˈstei ɪn ˈbed/ 22
steak /steɪk/ 28
steps /steɪps/ 38
stick /stɪk/ 49
stick as in memory stick /ˈstɪk/ 46
still adj /stɪl/ 28
still adv /stɪl/ 71
stomach /ˈstɑːmək/ 12
stomach-ache /ˈstɑːmək ˈeɪk/ 22
stop as in bus stop, last stop /ˈstɑːp/ 29
store as in department store /streɪt(r)/ 37
storm /stɜːrn/ 21
story as in love story /ˈstɔːrɪ/ 52
straight adj /ˈstreɪt/ 13
straight as in straight on /ˈstreɪt/ 31
strange /ˈstreɪndʒ/ 70
strawberry /ˈstrɔːbərri/ 25
strong /ˈstrɒŋ/ 70
study /ˈstʌdɪ/ 38
studies as in business studies /ˈstʌdɪz/ 43
stupid /ˈstjuːpid/ 14
subject /ˈsʌbjəkt/ 42
sugar /ˈʃʊɡə/ 26
suggestion /səˈdʒestʃən/ 65
suit /sʊt/ 18
suitcase /ˈsʊtɪskɛs/ 54, 56
summer /ˈsʌmə(r)/ 3
sun /ˈsʌn/ 21
sunbath /ˈsʌnbeθ/ 57
sunglasses /ˈsʌŋɡlæz/ 18
sunny /ˈsʌnɪ/ 21
sunshine /ˈsʌnʃaɪn/ 21
supermarket /ˈsuːpərmɑːkət/ 37
sure adj /ʃʊər/ 7, 65, 68
survive /ʃərvɪv/ 28, 63
surname /ˈsɜːnənmeɪ/ 9
surprised /səˈpraɪzd/ 16
sweater /ˈswetər/ 18
sweet /swiːt/ 25
swim n /swɪm/ 79
Swiss /ˈswɪz/ 4
Switzerland /ˈswɪtsərənd/ 4
taxi driver /ˈtæksi droyvə(r)/ 44
tea /tiː/ 27
teacher /ˈteɪʃər/ 44
team /tiːm/ 49
technology as in design and technology /ˈteknələdʒi/ 42
technology as in IT, ICT /ˈteknələdʒi/ 42
teenager /ˈtiːn(ə)ɡer/ 13
tens /ˈtɛnz/ 13
ten /ˈtiːn/ 17, 40
television /ˈtelɪvjuːn, ˈtelɪˌvʒən/ 41
temperature /ˈtɛmprərətiʃən/ 22
temple /ˈtempəl/ 35
tennis /ˈtenɪs/ 17, 49
tennis as in tennis match /ˈtenɪs/ 50
term /ˈtərm/ 43
terminal /ˈtɜːrnəml/ 56
terrible /ˈtɜːrəbl/ 36, 42, 79
text v, n /tekst/ 69
Thai /tʰai/ 4
Thailand /ˈtʰaɪlənd/ 4
thank you /ˈθæŋk ju:/ 66
thanks /θæŋks/ 26, 31, 60, 61, 66
that's all /ˈðeɪts ‘ɔl/ 26
the news /ðiːz ˈniːz/ 53
the same to you /ðə seɪm tə ‘juː/ 61
then /ðɛn/ 78
then as in See you then /ðɛn/ 60
thin /θiːn/ 13
think /θɪŋk/ 48, 68
third /θɜːd/ 3
thirsty /ˈθɜːsti/ 16
this evening, this weekend, etc. /ðɪz ˈɛvənɪŋ, ðɪz ˈwɛkənd/ 75
this is (used when introducing someone) /ðɪz ɪz/ 60
this is (used on the phone) /ðɪz ɪz/ 69
thousand /ˈθaʊzənd/ 1
thriller /ˈθrɪlər/ 52
throat /θreʊt/ 22
through /θruː/ 76
thumb /θʌm/ 12
thunder /ˈθʌndər/ 21
tick /tɪk/ 9
ticket /ˈtɪkt/ 30, 56
ticket office /ˈtɪktʃər oʊfɪs/ 39
tidy /ˈtʌndɪ/ 14
tie /tiː/ 18
tight /ˈtʃaɪt/ 19
tights /ˈtʃaɪts/ 18
time /tɜːm/ 2, 61
time as in half-time /haɪm/ 49
time as in have a nice time /haɪm/ 79
time as in (ten days') time /haɪm/ 75
timetabled /ˈtɪmətɪd/ 29, 30
tin /tɪn/ 25, 26
war film /ˈwɔːrfilm/ 52
wardrobe /ˈwɔːdreb/ 40
wash n /wɔʃ/ 40, 79
wash v /wɔʃ/ 40
washbasin /ˈwɔʃbeɪn/ 40
washing machine /ˈwɔʃɪŋməʃɪn/ 39
washing-up /ˈwɔʃɪŋap/ 39
waste /weɪst/ 68
watch n /wɔtʃ/ 18
watch v /wɔtʃ/ 50, 53
water n in mineral water /ˈwaʊtər/ 28
wavy /ˈwaɪvɪ/ 13
way /weɪ/ 31, 70
way in /weɪ ˈɪn/ 33
way out /weɪ ˈaʊt/ 33
weak /wiːk/ 70
wear /wɛər/ 18, 40
weather forecast /ˈweðər ˈfɔːkɑːst/ 53
web address /ˈwɛb əˈdres/ 47
webcam /ˈwebkæm/ 46
website /ˈwɛbziːt/ 47
week /wiːk/ 3, 17, 45, 55, 75
weekday /wiːkˈdeɪ/ 17
weekend /wiːk ˈɛnd/ 17, 61, 75, 79
weight /ˈwɛɪt/ 13
welcome /ˈwelkəm/ 61
well (= in a good way) /wel/ 15, 42, 61
well (= not ill) /wel/ 16, 22, 60
well (used when you feel uncertain) /wel/ 65
well as in as well /welz/ 77
well done (= congratulations) /wel ˈdʌn/ 61
well done (= cooked for a long time) /wel ˈdʌn/ 28
well known /wel ˈnɔːn/ 51
west /west/ 34, 35
wet /wet/ 21
what (used in questions) /wɛt/ 21, 27
what about? /wɛt ˈəʊtə/ 65
what’s on? (= happening) /wɔts ˈɒn/ 52
what’s the matter? /wɔts ˈði ˈmɛtərɪ/ 16, 21
when (= at what time) /wen/ 62
when (= the time something happened) /wen/ 78
where /weɪrə/ 62
where are you from? /weər ə ˈʃrʊm/ 4
whereabouts /ˈweərəˈbaʊts/ 8
which /wɪtʃ/ 62
while /waɪl/ 78
while as in for a while /waɪl/ 22
white /waɪt/ 18, 27, 28
who /hu/ 62
whose /huːz/ 62
why /waɪ/ 62
wide /waɪd/ 70
wife /waɪf/ 10

win (= be best or first) /wɪn/ 49
win (money) /wɪn/ 20
wind /wɪnd/ 21
window /ˈwɪndəʊ/ 41
window seat /ˈwɪndəʊ ˈsɛt/ 56
windy /ˈwɪndɪ/ 21
wine /ˈwɪn/ 28
winter /ˈwɪntər/ 3
wonderful /ˈwʌndəfl/ 36, 48
wood /wʊd/ 36
wool as in cotton wool /wʊl/ 23
word /wɜːd/ 6
work n /wɜːk/ 17
work v /wɜːk/ 42, 45
worried /ˈwɜːrd/ 16
worry as in don’t worry /ˈwʌrɪ/ 66
worst /ˈwɜːst/ 42
worth /wɜːθ/ 62
wrist /rɪst/ 12
write /rɪt/ 43, 59
wrong (= causing problems) /rɔŋ/ 62
wrong (= not right) /rɔŋ /ˈrɔŋ/ Stayer, 7, 19
wrong number /rɔŋ ˈnʌmbər/ 69
year /jɛər/ 3, 45
yellow /ˈjeləʊ/ 18
yes, please /ˈjes ˈplɪz, ˈjes ˈplɪz/ 27, 66
yesterday /ˈjeɪstədeɪ/ 75
you too /juː ˈtʊ/ 61
young /jʌŋ/ 13
zero /ˈzɜrəʊ/ 69
Oxford Word Skills
Learn and practise English vocabulary

Basic for elementary and pre-intermediate learners

- Learn the words you need to know at each level (Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced)
- See how the words and phrases are used in spoken and written English
- Practise using the vocabulary
- Revise what you’ve learned
- Improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- Learn the words as preparation for the major exams

Use the CD-ROM to listen to the words, learn how to say them, and practise using them.

It’s easy to test yourself. Just use the card inside to ‘cover and check’.

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt